DIRECTORATE OF EDUCATION

GNCT of Delhi, Delhi Government

SUPPORT MATERIAL (2021-2022)

Class: XII

GEOGRAPHY

Under the Guidance of

Mr. H. Rajesh Prasad

Secretary (Education)

Mr. Udit Prakash Rai

Director (Education)

Dr. Rita Sharma

Addl. DE (School & Exam.)

Coordinators

Sh. Sanjay Subhas Kumar Ms. Sunita Dua Sh. Raj Kumar Sh. Krishan Kumar DDE (Exam)

OSD (Exam)

OSD (Exam)

OSD (Exam)

Production Team

Anil Kumar Sharma

Published at Delhi Bureau of Text Books , 25/2 Institutional Area, Pankha Road, New Delhi-110058 by **Prabhjot Singh,** Secretary, Delhi Bureau of Text Books and Printed by Supreme Offset Press , New Delhi-110017

H. RAJESH PRASAD IAS



प्रधान सचिव (शिक्षा) राष्ट्रीय राजधानी क्षेत्र दिल्ली सरकार पुराना सचिवालय, दिल्ली-110054

दूरभाष : 23890187 टेलीफैक्स : 23890119

Pr Secretary (Education)
Government of National Capital Territory of Delhi
Old Secretariat, Delhi-110054
Phone: 23890187 Telefax: 23890119
e-mail: secyedu@nic.in

MESSAGE

I would like to congratulate the members of Core Academic Unit and the subject experts of the Directorate of Education, who inspite of dire situation due to Corona Pandemic, have provided their valuable contributions and support in preparing the Support Material for classes IX to XII.

The Support Material of different subjects, like previous years, have been reviewed/ updated in accordance with the latest changes made by CBSE so that the students of classes IX to XII can update and equip themselves with these changes. I feel that the consistent use of the Support Material will definitely help the students and teachers to enrich their potential and capabilities.

Department of Education has taken initiative to impart education to all its students through online mode, despite the emergency of Corona Pandemic which has led the world to an unprecedented health crises. This initiative has not only helped the students to overcome their stress and anxiety but also assisted them to continue their education in absence of formal education. The support material will ensure an uninterrupted learning while supplementing the Online Classes.

(H. Rajesh Prasad)

UDIT PRAKASH RAI, IAS

Director, Education & Sports



Directorate of Education

Govt. of NCT of Delhi Room No. 12, Civil Lines Near Vidhan Sabha, Delhi-110054 Ph.: 011-23890172 Mob.: 8700603939

E-mail : diredu@nic.in

MESSAGE

The main objective of the Directorate of Education is to provide quality education to all its students. Focusing on this objective, the Directorate is continuously in the endeavor to make available the best education material, for enriching and elevating the educational standard of its students. The expert faculty of various subjects undertook this responsibility and after deep discussions and persistent efforts, came up with Support Material to serve the purpose.

Every year the Support Material is revised/ updated to incorporate the latest changes made by CBSE in the syllabus of classes IX to XII. The contents of each lesson/chapter are explained in such a way that the students can easily comprehend the concept and get their doubts solved.

I am sure, that the continuous and conscientious use of this Support Material will lead to enhancement in the educational standard of the students, which would definitely be reflected in their performance.

I would also like to commend the entire team members for their contributions in the preparation of this incomparable material.

I wish all the students a bright future.

(UDIT PRAKASH RAI)

Dr. RITA SHARMA
Additional Director of Education
(School/Exam)



Govt. of NCT of Delhi

Directorate of Education
Old Secretariat, Delhi-110054

Ph.: 23890185

D.O. No. PA/Addl. DE/Sc4/31

Dated: 29.06.2021

MESSAGE

It gives me immense pleasure to present the revised edition of the Support Material. This material is the outcome of the tireless efforts of the subject experts, who have prepared it following profound study and extensive deliberations. It has been prepared keeping in mind the diverse educational level of the students and is in accordance with the most recent changes made by the Central Board of Secondary Education.

Each lesson/chapter, in the support material, has been explained in such a manner that students will not only be able to comprehend it on their own but also be able to find solution to their problems. At the end of each lesson / chapter, ample practice exercises have been given. The proper and consistent use of the support material will enable the students to attempt these exercises effectively and confidently. I am sure that students will take full advantage of this support material.

Before concluding my words, I would like to appreciate all the team members for their valuable contributions in preparing this unmatched material and also wish all the students a bright future.

(Rita Sharma)

·			

DIRECTORATE OF EDUCATION

GNCT of Delhi, Delhi Government

SUPPORT MATERIAL (2021-2022)

GEOGRAPHY

Class: XII

NOT FOR SALE

PUBLISHED BY: DELHI BUREAU OF TEXTBOOKS

·		

भारत का संविधान

नागरिकों के मूल कर्तव्य

अनुच्छेद ५१क

मूल कर्तव्य — भारत के प्रत्येक नागरिक का यह कर्तव्य होगा कि वह —

- 1. संविधान का पालन करे और उसके आदर्शों, संस्थाओं, राष्ट्र ध्वज और राष्ट्रगान का आदर करें।
- 2. स्वतंत्रता के लिए हमारे राष्ट्रीय आंदोलन को प्रेरित करने वाले उच्च आदर्शों को हृदय में संजोए रखे और उनका पालन करे।
- 3. भारत की प्रभुता, एकता और अखंडता की रक्षा करे और उसे अक्षुण्ण रखे।
- 4. देश की रक्षा करे।
- 5. भारत के सभी लोगों में समरसता और समान भ्रातृत्व की भावना का निर्माण करे।
- 6. हमारी सामाजिक संस्कृति की गौरवशाली परंपरा का महत्त्व समझे और उसका निर्माण करे।
- 7. प्राकृतिक पर्यावरण की रक्षा और उसका संवर्धन करे।
- 8. वैज्ञानिक दृष्टिकोण और ज्ञानार्जन की भावना का विकास करे।
- 9. सार्वजनिक संपत्ति को सुरक्षित रखे।
- 10. व्यक्तिगत एवं सामूहिक गतिविधियों के सभी क्षेत्रों में उत्कर्ष की ओर बढ़ने का सतत् प्रयास करे।
- 11. माता—पिता या संरक्षक द्वारा ६ से 14 वर्ष के बच्चों हेतु प्राथमिक शिक्षा प्रदान करना (86वां संशोधन)।

CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

Part IV A (Article 51 A)

Fundamental Duties

Fundamental Duties: It shall be the duty of every citizen of India —

- 1. to abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag and the National Anthem;
- 2. to cherish and follow the noble ideals which inspired our national struggle for freedom;
- 3. to uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India;
- 4. to defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so:
- 5. to promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic and regional or sectional diversities; to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women;
- 6. to value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture;
- 7. to protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers and wild life, and to have compassion for living creatures.
- 8. to develop the scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform;
- 9. to safeguard public property and to adjure violence;
- 10. to strive towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavour and achievement.
- 11. who is a parent or guardian to provide opportunities for education to his child or, as the case may be, ward between the age of six and fourteen years.

भारत का संविधान उद्देशिका

हम, भारत के लोग, भारत को एक (सम्पूर्ण प्रभुत्व—सम्पन्न समाजवादी पंथनिरपेक्ष लोकतंत्रात्मक गणराज्य) बनाने के लिए, तथा उसके समस्त नागरिकों को :

सामाजिक, आर्थिक और राजनैतिक न्याय, विचार, अभिव्यक्ति, विश्वास, धर्म और उपासना की स्वतंत्रता, प्रतिष्ठा और अवसर की समता प्राप्त करने के लिए, तथा उन सब में, व्यक्ति की गरिमा और (राष्ट्र की एकता और अखंडता) सुनिश्चित करने वाली बंधुता बढ़ाने के लिए

हम दृढ़संकल्प होकर इस संविधान को आत्मार्पित करते हैं।

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA PREAMBLE

WE, THE PEOPLE OF INDIA, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a **(SOVEREIGN SOCIALIST SECULAR DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC)** and to secure to all its citizens:

JUSTICE, social, economic and political,

LIBERTY of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship,

EQUALITY of status and of opportunity; and to promote among them all

FRATERNITY assuring the dignity of the individual and the **(unity an integrity of the Nation)**;

WE DO HEREBY GIVE TO OURSELVES THIS CONSTITUTION.

Support Material (Geography) Session -2021-22 Class XII

Prepared And Translated By:

Group Leader

1. Pushpa Tripathi Govt. Co-ed SSS sect. 22 (VICE PRINCIPAL) Dwarka, Delhi Emp. ID- 19910557School ID-1821204

Sub. Experts

Abrar Ahmad GBSSS, DDA Flats Lecturer Geograpgy PH-II Kalkaji New Delhi School ID-1925016 Mrs Kusum Joshi RPVV Sect. 10 Lecturer Geography Dwarka, Delhi Emp. ID - 20191254 School ID-1821137 4. Mrs Neeru Mahajan Govt. Co-ed Sarvodaya Lecturer Geography Vidyalaya, Rampura Emp. ID- 19920786School ID-1411032

Geography (Code No. 029) Class -XII (2021-2022)

One Theory Paper

3 Hour 70 Marks

PART A	Fundamental of Physical Geography	35 Marks
	Unit 1: Human Geography: Nature and Scope	30
	Unit 2: People	
	Unit 3: Human Activities	
	Unit 4: Transport, Communication and Trade	
	Unit 5: Human settlements	
	Map Work	5
PART B	India- People and Economy	35 Marks
	Unit 6: People	
	Unit 7: Human Settlements	
	Unit 8: Resources and Development	
	Unit 9: Transport, Communication and	
	International Trade	30
	Unit 10 : Geographical Perspective on selected issues and problems	
	Map work	5
PART C	Practical Work	35 Marks
	Unit 1: Processing of Data and Thematic	
	Mapping	15
	Unit 2: Field Study or Spatial information	
	Technology	10
	Units 3: Practical Record Book and Viva Voce	5

Geography (Code No. 029) Class-XII

Part-A Fundamentals of Human Geography 90 Periods 35 Marks
Unit 1: Human Geography: Nature and Scope 05 Periods

Unit 2: People

18 Periods

- Population- distribution, density and growth
- Population change-urban composition;
- Age-sex ratio; rural-concepts; selected Indicators, international comparisons

Unit 3: Human Activities

28 Periods

- Primary activities- concepts and changing trends; gathering, pastoral, agriculture and allied activities- some examples from selected countries.
- Secondary activities- concept; manufacturing: types- household, small scale, large scale; agro based and mineral based industries people engaged in secondary activities-some examples from selected countries.
- Tertiary activities- concept; trade, transport and tourism; services people
 engaged in tertiary activities- some examples from selected countries
 Quatenary activities- concept; people engaged in Quatenary activities
 case study from selected countries.

Unit 4: Transport, Communication and Trade

24 Periods

- Land transport- roads, railways trans-contnental railways.
- Wear transport- inland waterways; major ocean routes.
- Air transport- Intercontinental air routes.
- Oil and gas pipelines.
- Satellite communication and cyber space- Importance and usage for geographical information; use of GPS.
- International trade- Bases and changing patterns; ports as gateways of international trade, role of WTO in international treaties.
- Ocean: national rights and international treaties.

Unit 5: Human settlements

10 Periods

Settlement types- rural and urban; morphology of cities (case study); distribution of mega cities; problems of human settlements in developing countries.

Map Work on identification of features based on 1-5 units on the outline\Physical\Political map of world.

05 Periods

Part B. India: People and Economy 90 Periods

Unit 6: People

6 Periods

- Population: distribution, density and growth; composition of populationlinguistic, religious; sex, rural-urban and occupational- regional variations in growth of population.
- Human development: selected indicators and regional patterns.
- Population, environment and development

Unit 7: Human Settlements

10 Periods

- Rural settlements- types and distribution
- Urban settlements- types, distribution and functional classification.

Unit 8: Resources and Development

- Land resources- general land use; agricultural land use, Geographical conditions and distribution of major crops (Wheat, Rice, Tea, Coffee, Cotton, Jute, Sugarcane and Rubber), agricultural development and problems.
- Water resources- availability and utilization- Irrigation, domestic, industrial and other uses; scarcity of water and conservation methods; rain water harvesting and watershed management.
- Mineral and energy resource- distribution of metallic (Iron ore, Copper, Bauxite, Manganese_; non-metallic; minerals(Salt); conventional (Coal, Petroleum, Natural gas and Hydroelectricity) and non-conventional energy sources (solar, wind, biogas)
- Industries- types, factors of industrial location, distribution and changing pattern of selected industries-iron steel, cotton, textiles, sugar, petrochemicals, and knowledgebased industries; impact of liberalization, privatization and globalization and industrial location;

industrial clusters.

• Planning in India- target group, target area planning (case study) idea of sustainable development (case study)

Unit 9: Transport, Communication and International Trade. 15 periods

- Transport and communication-roads, railways, waterways and airways oil and gas pipeline; Geographical information and communication networks.
- International trade- changing pattern of India's foreign trade; sea ports and their hinterland and airports.

Unit10: Geographical Perspective on Selected Issues and Problems 15 Periods

- Environmental pollution; urban-waste disposal.
- Urbanisation, rural-urban migration; problems of slums.
- Land degradation.

Map work on locating and labeling of features based on above units on outline map of India.

5 Periods

Part-C Practical Work

40 Periods

Unit 1: Processing of Data and Thematic Mapping

25 Periods

- Type and Sources of data: Primary, Secondary and Other sources.
- Tabulating and processing of data; calculation of averages, measures of central tendency, deviation and rank correlation.
- Representation of data- construction of diagrams: bars, circles and flowchart: thematic maps; construction of dot; choropleth and isopleth maps.
- Data analysis and generation of diagrams, graphs and other visual diagrams using computers.

Unit 2: Field Study or Spatial information Technology 15periods

Field visit and study: map orientation, observation and preparation of sketch; survey on any one of the local concerns; pollution, ground water changes, land use and land-use changes, povery, energy issues, soil

degradation, impact of floods and drought, catchment area of school, Market survey and Household survey (any one topic of concern may be taken for the study; observation and questionnaire survey may be adopted for the data collection; collected data may be tabulated and analysed with diagrams and maps). Students can be given different topics to get more insight into various problems of society.

Or

Spatial Information Technology

Introduction to GIS; hardware requirements and software modules; data forats; raster and vector data, data inputs, editing and topology building; data analysis; overlay and buffer.

Prescribed Books

- 1. Fundamentals of Physical Geography, Class XI, Published by NCERT
- 2. India, Physical Environment, Class XI, Published by NCERT
- 3. Practical Work in Geography, class XI, Published by NCERT
- 4. Fundamentals of Human Geography, Class XII, Published by NCERT
- 5. India- People and Economy, Class XII, Published by NCERT
- 6. Practical Work in Geography, Class XII, Published by NCERT

Note: The above textbooks are also available in Hindi medium.

Fundamental of Human Geography Textbook I (NCERT)

Map items for identification only on the outline political map of the world.

Unit-1 Ch-1
Unit-2 Ch-2 to 4
Unit-2 Ch 5 to 7

Unit-3 Ch.5 to 7

Primary Activities

Ni1

- 1. A large country in each cntinent in terms of area.
- 1. Areas of subsistence gathering
- 2. Major areas of nomadic herding of the world.
- 3. Major areas of commercial livestock rearing.
- 4. Major areas of extensive commercial grain faming.
- 5. Major areas of mixed farming of the World.
- 6. Major areas of mediterranean agriculture of the world.

Secondary Activities

Unit-4 Ch-8 to 9

1. Ruhr region, Silicon Valley, Appalachian region, Great lakes region.

- 2. Trans-continental Railways; terminal Stations of transcontinental railways
- 3. Major Sea Ports:

Europe: North cape, London, Hamburg North America: Vancouver, San Francisco, New Orieans

South America: Rio-De janeiro, Colon, Valparaiso Africa: Sue, Durban and Cape Town Asia: Yokohama, Shanghai, Hongkong, Aden, Colombo, Karachi, Kolkata Austria: Perth, Sidney, Melbouren

- 4. Inland Waterways: Suez Canal, Panama Canal, Rhine waterway and St. Lawrence Seaway
- 5. Major Airports:

Asia: Tokyo, Beijing, Irkutsk, Vladivostok, Mumbai, Jedda, Aden

Europe: Moscow, London, Paris, Berlin, and Rome

North America: Chicago, new Orliens, Mexico

City

South America: Buenos Aires, Santiago

Australia: Darwin and Wellington

Mega cities of the world- Tokyo, Delhi, Sanghai,

Mumbai, Saopaulo

India-People and economy Textbook II (NCERT)

Map 2 Iteams for locating and labelling only on the outline political map of India

Units-6&7 Ch. 1 to 4.

Unit-5 Ch-10

- States with high level of urbanization and low level of urbanization
- One state with high level of HDI and one with low level of HDI
- State with higher level of population pressure on land Et one state lower level of population pressure on land.
- One state with maximum number of out migrating population
- One state with maximum number of Im migrants
- One state with higher gender ratio Et one with lower gender ratio
- Cities with more than 10 million population-Mumbai, Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai, Bengaluru.

Leading producing states of the following crops:

- (a) Rice, (b) Wheat, (c) Jowar, (d) Cotton,
- (e) Jute, (f) sugarcane, (g) tea, and (h) Coffee Minerals:

Iron-ore mines:- Mayurbhanj, Bailadila, Ratnagiri, Bellary. Manganese mines: Balagat, Shimoga.

Copper mines:- Hazaribagh, Singhbhum, Khetari, Bauxite mines:- Katni, Bilaspur and Koraput

Unit-8 Ch. 5 to 9

xxi

Coal mins:- Jharia, Bokaro, Raniganj, Neyvali. Oil Refineries:- Mathura, Jamnagar, Mangalore, Tatipaka, Haldia, Guwahati, Baroni. Industries- Iron and steel Plants: Bhadrvati, Bhilai, Biokaro. Durgapur, Rourkela and Jamshedpur.

Cotton Textile:- Surat, Gwalior, varanasi, Murshidabad, Solapur and coimbatore Software Technology Parks:- Gandhinagar, Shrinagar, Bengaluru, Hyderabad, Indore and Major Industrial region

Unit-9 Ch.10-11

Transport:

- i. Important tower on North South Corridor, East West Corridor & Golden Quadrilateral.
- ii. Headquarters of all railway Zones.
- iii. Major Sea Ports: Kandla, Mumbai, Marmagao, Kochi, Ennore, Tuticorin, Chennai, Vishakhapatnrm, Paradwip, Haldia.
- iv. International Airports: Ahmedabad, Mumbai, Bangaloru, Chennai, Kolkata, Guwahati, Delhi, Amritsar, Panaji, Kochi, Thiruvananthapuram and Hyderabad.

Unit- 10 Ch.12

NIL

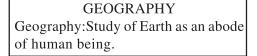
Part-I Fundamentals of Human Geography

Chapter	Subject	Page no.
1.	Human Geography: Nature and scope	01
2.	The world Population: Distribution, Density and growth	09
3.	Population composition	23
4.	Human Development	35
5.	Primary activity	45
6.	Secondary Activity	55
7.	Tartiary and Quaternary	63
8.	Transport and communication	73
9.	International Trade	81
10.	Human Settlement	87

CHAPTER-1

Human Geography: Nature & scope

CONCEPT MAP



PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY of physical environment of different region

HUMAN GEOGRAPHY study of inter relationships between human and physical environment

NATURE OF HUMAN GEOGRAPHY

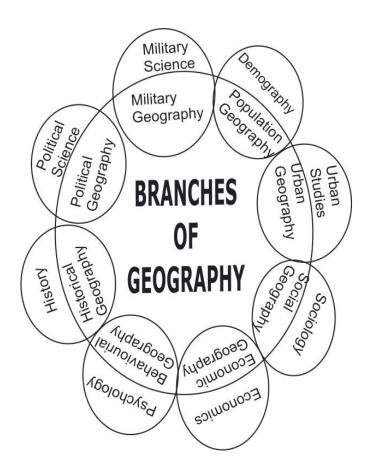
- Human Geography is human centric science.
- Human Geography is human ecology ·
- Elements of human are connected with terrestrial integrity.
- Human Geography is the Science of society.
- Human Geography is based on areal differences

FIELD OF HUMAN DEOGRRAPHY

- Study of population and its capabilities
- It studies the use and management of resources of the regions.
- Studies cultural environment.
 - It is the study of environmental adaptation.
 - It studies about the time sequence of environmental adaptation.

APPROACHES TO HUMAN GEORAPHY

- Ecological approach
- Regional approach
- Behavioural approach.
- Welfare approach
- Systematic approach.



MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Which of the following is not an approach to human geography?
 - (a) Exploration and description
 - (b) Post modernism in geography
 - (c) Areal differentiation
 - (d) Humanisation of nature
- Q.2. Which of the following geographer is associated with possibilism?
 - (a) Ratzel
 - (b) Vidal-de-la- Blache
 - (c) Ellen C. Semple
 - (d) Emmanuel kant
- Q.3. Consider the following statements and choose the correct option the given

	options
	(1) Physical geography studies about the physical environment.(2) Human geography is the study of relation ships between human beings and their physical environment.
	(a) Only 1 in correct
	(b) Only 2 in correct
	(c) Both 1 and 2 are correct
	(d) Both are in correct
Q.4.	Which of the following geographer is associated with the given definition "Human geography is the study of changing relationship between the unresting man and the unstable earth" (a) Huntington (b) Ellen c. semple (c) Vidal-de-la Blache (d) Griffith Taylor
	(d) Offificial Taylor
Q.5.	"In the early stage of development, We can imagine a naturalised human. Who listened to nature, was afraid of its fury and worshipped it. The statement is supported by which of the following concept of human geography." (a) Determinism (b) Possibilism
	(c) Neo Determinism
	(d) Behavioural approach
Q.6.	Which of the following approach emphasises on the use of computer and sophisticated statistical tools?
	(a) Areal differentiation
	(b) Regional Analysis
	(c) Spatial Orgnisation
	(d) Exploration and description
Q.7.	Fill in the blanks
	i indicates the level of cultural development of society
	ii. Konwledge of is important
Δnc	(I) Technology (ii) Natural laws

Q.8. Neither is there a situation of absolute necessity nor is there a condition of absolute freedom.

Above mentioned statement supported which of the following concepts.

- (a) Possibilism
- (b) Determinism
- (c) Behaviourlism
- (d) Neo determinism
- Q.9. Which one of the following is not correctly matched.

Scholar Approach

- (a) Friedrich Ratzel __ Determinism
- (b) Ellen.C.Semple __ Welfare Geography
- (c) Griffith Taylor __ Neo determinism
- (d) Vidal de la Blache __Possiblism
- Q.10. Which of the following things are not created by nature.
 - (a) Natural vegetation
 - (b) Soils
 - (c) Farms
 - (d) Land Farms
- Q.11. Which of the following is not a branen of Human Geography.
 - (a) Urban Geography
 - (b) Population Geography
 - (c) Economic Geography
 - (d) Physical Geography

ANSWER KEY

- 1. D,2. B,3. C, 4. B, 5. A, 6. C
- 7. Technology, Natural laws
- 8. D,9. B,10. C, 11. D

SHORT ANSWER QUESTION(3 MARK QUESTION)

Q.12. Give the definition of Human geography and also mention its main field.

- Ans. The study of interrelationships and variations between physical environment and human beings is called as human geography. It is the synthetic study of relationship between human societies and earth' surface. Study areas (field) of human geography.
 - It studies about the population and its capabilities of a ragion.
 - It studies about-the use and planning of resources of a region.
 - Studies cultural environmental adaptation.
- Q.13. "The elements of physical geography and human geography are interrelated with each other. Explain the statement by giving suitable examples
- Ans. The elements of physical geography and human geography interact each other. The livelihood and social economic activities of humans are affected by different physical factors like; nature of terrain, climate, soil, water, and vegetation. Nature determines the functions and life of human being Human life is depend upon natural resources and the availability of these natural resources greatly govern the employment, cropping system and the medium of transport. Nature provides minimum opportunities for the development of human and humans being avail these opportunities for their development.
- Q.14. Nature and human are so intricately interwined that they Can't be separated from each other. Explain the statement with examples
- Ans. There is compler integration found between the nature and humans.
 - 1. Humans and nature are inseparable.
 - 2. Humans have created social and cultural environment by interacting with natural environment.
 - 3. Physical and human phenomenon are described in metaphors using symbols from the human anatomy.
- Q.15. What is the subject matter of the study of human geography? Explain any three facts in his regard.
- Ans. Following three important facts are important for the study of human geography
 - 1. The study of cultural environment created by the interaction between physical environment and human beings
 - 2. Considering earth as the abode of human being and study all those elements or factors those are cherished by human being
 - 3. Study of whole human world and its capabilities living over surface of

earth.

Q.16. Explain the concept of environmental determinism by giving suitable examples.

Or

In the early stages of their interaction with their natural environment humans were greatly influenced by it". Prove the statement.

Ans.

- 1. Earlier the level of technology was very low and the stage of development was also primitive.
- 2. He adapted to the dictates of nature.
- 3. We can imagine the presence of a naturalised human, who listened to nature, was afraid of its fury and worshipped it.
- 4. This type of interaction between primitive human society and strong forces of nature was termed as environmental determinism.
- 5. The physical environment for such societies becomes the "Mother nature".
- Q.17. "Nature provides opportunities and human being make use of these and slowly nature gets humanised". Which concept of human geography is revealed by the given statement.?

Ans.

- 1. This concept of human geography is known as "Possibilism"
- 2. Humans develop better and more efficient technology with the passage of time and create possibilities with the resources obtained from the environment.
- 3. The human activities create cultural landscape and the imprints of human activities created everywhere.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS)

Q.18. "Conceptually, Neo determinism reflects a middle path between environmental determinism and possibilism". Explain

Or

"Neo determinism is introduced by Griffith Taylor that reflects a middle path between two ideas." Explain

Or

Describe any three features of Neo determinism.

Ans. This concept was introduced by Griffith Taylor.

1. This concept gives a middle path between Environmental determinism

- and possibilism.
- 2. It focused on the creation of possibilities within the limits which do not damage the environment.
- 3. The concept show that neither is there a situation of absolute necessity not is there a condition of absolute freedom.
- 4. Human beings can conquer nature by obeying it and save it from damage
- 5. Use of natural resources should be in limit other wise it will create environmental problems. For example reckless cutting of forests should stop due to industriaisation and mining.
- Q.19. What do you mean by the Humanist aprach of human geography.? Ans.
 - 1. It means integrating the study of human geography with the different aspects of the welfare of human being and social conciousness.
 - 2. It was postulated in 1970
 - 3. It was focused on housing, health and education
 - 4. It emphasised on the central and active role of human beings.
 - 5. Study of this approach focused on the causes of regional disparities, poverty, deprivation. It also focus on ways to come out of these problems.
- Q.20. "To develop technology, understanding of natural laws is important" prove to statement by giving appropriate examples.

Ans.

- 1. Technology indicates the level of cultural development of society.
- 2. Human beings we able to develop technology after they developed better understanding of natural laws. For example, the understanding of concepts of friction and heat helped us discover fire.
- 3. Understanding of the secrects of DNA and genetics enabled us to conquer many diseases.
- 4. We use the laws of aerodynamics to develop faster plane.
- 5. Cultural environment is formed on the basis of the knowledge of nature.
- Q.21. "The imprints of human activities are created everywhere." Explain the statement with appropriate examples.
- Ans. Nature provides opportunities and human being make use of these and slowly nature gets humanised and starts bearing the imprints of human endeavour for

example.

- 1. Pastures in plains and rolling hills.
- 2. Use of oceanic surface in the form of oceanic routes.
- 3. Health resorts on highlands.
- 4. projection of satellites into the Space.
- 5. Huge urban sprawls.
- Q.22. "The concerns of human geography is a long temporal continum though the approaches to articulate them have changed over time. This dynamism in approaches shows the vibrant nature of the discipline." Explain the approaches of geography in reference to given statement.

Ans.

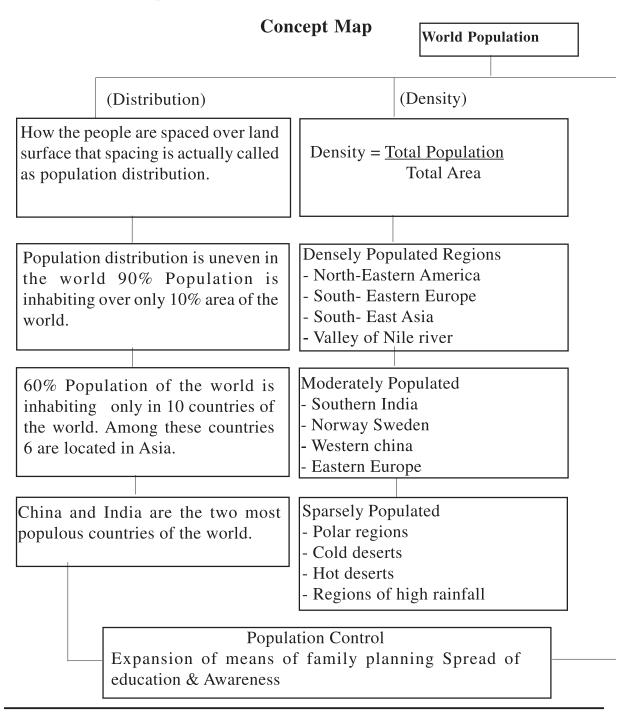
- 1. Earlier interaction between different societies was nill and knowledge about each other was limited.
- 2. Travellers and explores used to disseminate information about the regions they traveled to.
- 3. Navigational skills were not developed and voyages were fought with dangers.
- 4. In the down late of 15th century in Europe, explorations about-new world started and gradually myths and secrets about people and countries were started to open up.
- 5. During colonial period, explorations were done to boost up to reach the resources of the regions and to get inventorised information.
- Q.22. "Both physical and human phenomena are described in metaphors using symbols from the human anatomy." Describe the statement by giving suitable example.

Ans.

- 1. Human and nature are inseparable they are seen as integrated elements.
- 2. In geography, both human and physical phenomena are described in metaphors using symbols from the human anatomy.
- 3. For Example we use the tern "eyes" of storm, "Mouth" of the river, "Snout" of the glacier, neck of the isthmus, profile of the soil.
- 4. Regions villages and cities are described in the form of living organisms.
- 5. Networks of road, railways and water ways have often been described as "arteries of circulation".

LESSON -2

World Population: Distribution, Density and Growth



Components of population Change

Birth rate, Death rate and migration are the major componets of population Change.

It took 200 years to become population from 20 crore to 1 billion. But it took only 12 years to doubling the population from 5 to 6 billion.

Liberia, Somalia, Yemen, Soudi Arab, etc, are included in the countries having high growth rate of population.

Latvia, Estonia, Russia, Albania, Germany, Protugal have recorded low population growth.

Effects of unbalanced growth

Resource deptetion and Environmental degradation

Diseases and Pandemics and spread of deadly desease like AIDS

Hinderence in developmental Processes

Natural Calamites and wars.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Who has given the following remark about the population of Asia? "Asia has many places where people are few and few places were people are many".
 - a) George B. cressy
 - b) Malthus
 - c) Hartshorne
 - d) Ratzel
- Q.2. Read the following statements carefully and choose the correct one from the given options.
 - I. The term population distribution refers to the way people are spaced over the earth's surface.
 - II. 90% of the world population lives in about 10% of its land area.
 - a) Only (i) is correct.
 - b) Only (ii) is correct.
 - c) Both statements are correct.
 - d) Both statements are incorrect.
- Q.3. Which of the following factor does not affect the population distribution?
 - (a) Availability of water
 - (b) Land forms
 - (c) Climate
 - (d) Means of recreation
- Q.4. When people move from one place to another the place they move from is called the
 - a). Place of Destination
 - b.) Place of Origin
 - b). Immigration
 - d.) Emigration
- Q.5. Match the following
 - 1. In migration
- (i) Unemployment
- 2. out migration
- (ii) Better conditions of livelihood
- 3. Pull factors
- (iii) Migrants who move to new places
- 4. Push factors
- (iv) Migrants who come from a place

		1	2	3	4					
	a)	(iii)	(iv)	(i)	(ii)					
	b)	(ii)	(i)		(iv)					
	c)	(iv)	(iii)	(ii)	(i)					
	d)	(ii)	(iv)	(i)	(iii)					
Q.6.	a)b)c)d)	Urb Bir Dea Mig	oaniza th rat ath ra gratic	ation e te on					population change?	
Q.7.		ncn (nsitio		toll	owing	condi	tions re	flect th	e last stage of demographic	3
	a)			tility	and hi	gh mor	tality			
	b)	_		-		insecu	-			
	c)	_			opulat		illey			
	d)			_	_		oved te	chnolog	Sy	
			_							
Q.8.					_		atched		•	
	a)									
	b)	(Death- Birth) + In migration-out migration=Actual growth of population								
	c)	No. of Death per thousand persons = Birth rate Movement of population from one place to another= migration								
	u)	d) Movement of population from one place to another= migration								
Q.9.	. In which of the following stage of demographic transition does India fall?									
	a)	First stage								
	b)	Sec	cond s	stage						
	c)		ird sta	_						
	d)	No	t in a	ny sta	ge					
0.10). Fill	in th	ne bla	nks						
V .10	a)				move	into a	new pla	ce are o	calledfor that place.	
	b)		_				_		ledfor that place.	
	(a)	Imi	migra	nts		(b)	Emmi	grants		

- Q.11. Which of the following deadly epidemics in Africa and some parts of the common wealth of Independent states (CIS) and also have pushed up death rates and reduced average life expectancy?
 - (a) Cholera
 - (b) T.B
 - (c) Dengue fever
 - (d) HIV AIDS
- Q.12. Which of the following factors was mainly responsible for the rapid growth of population in 20th century.
 - (a) Development of bio technology and information technology
 - (b) Development of agriculture
 - (c) Development of transport
 - (d) Industrial development

ANSWER KEY

1.A, 2. C, 3. D, 4. B, 5. C, 6. A, 7. D, 8. C, 9. B 10. Immigrants, Emmigrants 11. D, 12. A

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3 MARKS QUESTION)

- Q.13. Define population growth. Explain the difference between positive and negative growth of population.
- Ans. The population growth or population change refers to the change in number of inhabitants of a territory during a specific period of time. It can be expressed either in terms of percentage or in absolute numbers.
 - (i) Positive growth of population this happens when the birth rate is more than the death rate between two points of time or when people from other countries migrate permanently to a region.
 - (ii) Negative growth of population- If the population decreases between two points of time it is known as negative growth of population. It occurs when the birth rate falls below the death rate or people migrate to other countries.

Q.14. Describe the pull factors of migration of population n the world.

Ans. Place of destination seems more attractive as compared to the place of origin due to pull factors. These are as follows.

- 1. Better opportunities of employment
- 2. Better conditions of livelihood
- 3. peace and political stability
- 4. Favourable climate
- 5. Safety of life and property

Q.15. Describe the push factors of migrating population in the world.

Ans. Push factors of migration make the place of origin less attractive. Due to these factors people leave the place of origin. These are as follows.

- 1. Poor conditions of living
- 2. political turmoil
- 3. Unfavourable climate
- 4. Natural calamities
- 5. Epidemics
- 6. Economic backwardness

Q.16. Describe the three main components of population change.

Ans. Following are the three important components of population change.

1. Birth rate- The crude birth (CBR) is expressed as number of live births in a year per thousand of population. Increase and decrease in birth rate is directly related to the population change. It is calculated as

$$CBR = \underline{Bi} \times 100$$

p

- 2. Death rate Death rate plays an active role in population change. Population growth occurs not only by increasing birth rate but also due to decreasing death rate.
- 3. Migration- Apart from birth and death, migration also changes the size of population. It includes the movement of people from the place of origin to the place of destination. It may be permanent temporary or seasonal.
- Q.17. Explain the factors, those are responsible for population change or decline of population of a region.

Ans. Population growth of a region may affect the economic development of a region in both positive and negative ways

- Problems emerged due to population growth.
- 1. Exerts excessive pressure over resources.
- 2. Depletion of resources.
- 3. Difficulty to feed population or insufficiency of resources to maintain population.
- 4. Hinderence in the rate of development
- Consequences of population decline-
- 1. Resources can not be utlized fully.
- 2. Basic structure of society become unstable by itself.
- 3. The future of society leads towards anxiety and dark.
- Q.18. Enlist- the regions having high population density in the world.
- Ans. Areas having more than 200 person per square kilo meters are considered as regions of high population density in the world- mainly four regions of the world are included in this category-
 - I. North-Eastern part of United States of America
 - II. North-Western part of Europe
 - III. Southern and South-Eastern Asia
 - IV. Valley of Nile river
- Q.19. How the science and technology helped in the population growth? explain in three points.

Or

Science and technology play an important role both in population growth and control. Explain in three points.

Ans.

- I. Science and technology strengthened the agriculture and industries that boosted up production which ultimately leads to population growth.
- II. Many diseases were conquered and control on death rate due to science and technology.
- III. The development of science and technology improved the living condition of people and provided then luxurious of life which lead to population

growth.

- Q.20. What factors ae responsible for the high density of population in monsoon Asia?
- Ans. China, India, Bangladesh, Japan, Singapor, Indonesia and Java island are mainly included in the monsoon regions of the world-
 - 1. Fertile soil and plenty of rainfall
 - 2. Due to favourable climate, 2 or 3 crops can be grown in a year in these regions.
 - 3. Most of the population is dependent upon agriculture in these regions.
 - 4. In some places, population density found is between 400 to 800 people per square kilometer of area.
- Q.21. What are the methods adopted by the government to achieve the target of population control?

Ans.

- 1. Spreading of family planning programme.
- 2. To make easy availability of good quality of contraceptives
- 3. Spread of education, especially among women.
- Q.22. According to the density, world can be divided into how many categories?

Ans. Generally world can be divided into 3 categories on the basic of density.

- 1. Highly population density regions (200 persons) Km² area) -North-eastern part of United States of America, North-Western and Southern part of Europe, Southern and South-Eastern Asia.
- 2. Moderatel population density regions (11-50 persons/km² area) Western Chine in Asia, Norway and Sweden in Southern Europe.
- 3. Sparsel populated density regions (1 person/km²) Areas located near north and south pole, hot and cold deserts, areas located near the equator.
- Q.23. Explain the spatial patten of population change in the world.

Ans. Spatial Pattern of population of change in the world.

- Population growth and economic development are inversely related. Because of that reason developing countries recorded high rate of population growth as compared to developed countries.
- There is very low rate of population growth (1.4%) found in the world,

- still population increasing rapidly.
- When low annual growth rate is implemented on the large size of population then a big change occurs in total population.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS QUESTION)

- Q.24. Define population distribution. Also explain any four geographical factors that affect population distribution of a region.
- Ans. The term population distribution refers to the way people are spaced over the earth's surface.
 - Following geographical factors are responsible for the uneven distribution of population
 - I. Availability of water- It is very much important factor for human survival. So people prefer to live in areas where fresh water is easily available. Water is used in all spheres of life weather it is house hold, agriculture or industrial sector. Because of this river valleys are among the most densely populated areas of the world.
 - II. Land forms or relief- People prefer to live in flat plains and gentle slopes. Because these areas are very much suitable for economic development activities, such as production of crops and building roads and industries. But the mountains and hilly areas hinder the development of transport and other activities which make these areas less attractive to live. Due to this reason valleys of ganga, Brahmaputra, Hwang ho etc. are density populated where as mountains like Himalayan regions are sparsely populated
 - III. Climate- Areas with a comfortable climate, where three is not much seasonal variation attract more people. But the areas having extreme climate such as very hot or cold deserts are uncomfortable for human habitation. Mediterranean regions attracted more people due to pleasant climate found over there.
 - IV. Soils- For human survival food is also very important. To grow food human always look for fertile soil. Fertile soils are important for agriculture and allied activities. So areas having loamy soils have inhabited densely. In India ganga and Brahmaputra plains are densely populated due to fertile alluvial soils found there.

- Q.25. "Population distribution is very uneven in the world". Analyse the important. Physical and economic factors affecting population distribution in context of given statement.
- Ans. It is true, population is spaced over the earth surface unevenly. 90 percent of the world population lives in about 10 percent of its land area. Following geographical and economic factors are responsible for it.
 - Geographical factors:-(As given in Q. no.24 -Availability of water, Land from, Climate, Soils)
 - Economic factors-
 - I. Availability of minerals- Inspite of Unfavourable Climate, people want to inhabit in the areas rich in minerals. Because mining and industrial activities generate employment and give way to industrial development that ultimately leads to economic development of a region. So the people start to move to such places gold mines in kaalgoorlie and coolgaridte, oil extraction Saudi Arabia, Katanga Zambia copper belt in Africa are good examples of human inhabitation due to availability of important minerals.
 - II. urbanisation and industrialisation sites have always remained a point of attraction for more peoples due to the employment opportunities, high living standard and other basic amenities found there. So the mega cities such as greater Mumbai, London, Delhi etc. continue to attract large number of migrants every year. Industrialisation to is responsible for attracting large number of people because they provide jobs to large number of people in different way such as factory workers, clerks, Banking, transport etc. Kobe-Osaka region of Japan is thickly populated due to its industrial development.
- Q.26. How the rapid growth of population directly affect the economic development of a country or a region. Explain
- Ans. Economic development of a country is directly dependent upon the resource base available in that country. It the country attained an optimum balance that means no. of people are according to the resource availability than it will go on the path of development smoothly. But an axcess of population exerts great pressure on available resources that ultimately leads a country to wards backwardness and problems in the form of following consequences.

- 1. Food problem or food insecurity- due to heavy population it would be difficult to feed large population from the limited land resources.
- 2. Problems of Housing- Due to heavy population intense use of land resources increased, and it leads to shrinking which leads to problems of housing.
- 3. Unemployment- Due to large population resources become less and hinderence in development activities takes place which leads to unemployment.
- 4. Low standard of living Limited resources are distributed among the large number of people. so the standard of living becomes poor.
- 5. Pressure on agricultural land- There is great pressure on agricultural land due to heavy population. Intensive use of land was started to feed large population that ultimately lead to the problem of land degradation.
- 6. Lack of Health facilities- It become quite impossible to reach health facilities among all the sections of society due to great number of people.
- Q.27. What do you mean by Demographic Transition Theory? Explain its stages by giving appropriate examples.
- Ans. Demographic Transition theory used to describe and predict the future population of any area. The theory tells us that population of any region changes from high birth and high deaths to low birth and low deaths as society progresses from rural agrarian and illiterate to urban industrial and literate society.

Rural Demographic Urban Industrial

- The First stage- High fertility and high mortality due to more reproduction to compensate for the deaths.
- Slow population growth and dependance
- Low life expectancy, illiteracy, and low levels of technology
- All the countries were in this stage before 200 year ago.

Second stage-

- High fertility in the beginning but declines with time.
- Accompanied by reduced mortality
- Improvements in sanitation and health condition.

- Net gap between fertility and mortality, net addition to population is high.

This stage

- Considerable decline in both fertility and mortality.
- Stable or slow growth of population
- Urbanised and literate population
- High technical know how
- Deliberately controls the family size.
- Q.28. World has many places where people are few and few places where people are very many". Prove the statement by giving appropriate examples.

Or

Pattern of population distribution is unique in the world. Explain

Ans.

- Broadly 90 percent of the world population lives in about 10 percent of its land area.
- The 10 most populous countries of the world contributed about 60 percent of the world's population of these six are located in Asia-such as Japan, Bangladesh, Pakistan, Indonesia, India and China.
- The North- Eastern part of U.S.A, North-western part of Europe, South, South-East and East Asia are densely populated
- Areas near the North and South poles, the hot and the cold deserts and high rainfall zones near equator have very low density of population with less then 1 person per sq. km.
- Population is more in the northern hemisphere and less in Southern hemisphere. Because most part of the southern hemisphere is watery.
- Most population of the world live beyond o⁰ to 45⁰ northern hemisphere.
- Q.29. Describe in brief the trends of population growth from prehistoric period till present.

Ans.

- The population on the earth is more then 700 crore. It has grown to this size over centuries.
- In the early periods population of the world grew very slowly. It is only during the last few hundreds year that population has increased at an alarming rate.
- After the evolution and introduction of agriculture about 800 to 1200

- years ago, the size of population was small.
- Around 1750 at the dawn of the industrial Revolution, the world population was 550 million.
- World population exploded in the eighteenth century after the Industrial Revolution.
- Technological advancement achieved so for that it helped in the reduction of birth rate and provide a stage for accelerated population growth.

LESSON-3

POPULATION COMPOSITION

Concept Map

- 0-14 age group dependent population
- 15-59 age group working population
- Aged population aged above 60
- Age Gender structure is found in the population pyramid.

Age Structure A person above the age of 7 years who can read and write with understanding and has the ability calculate Gender arithmetic Pooulation Education Composition called literate. Composition Literacy is an indicator of social and economic **Busines Structure** development of the country.

- The ratio between the number of females and males in population is called the sex ratio.
- In India, the sex ratio is determined using this formula

Female population

Male population X 1000.

- The average sex ratio of the world population is 102 males per 100 females.
- The highest sex ratio in the world is Latvia (85 males per 100 females).
- The lowest sex ratio is in United Arab Emirates (311 miles per 100 females)
- In developing countries more people are found to be engaged in primary activites.
- In developed countries, more people are engaged in secondary and territory sectors.
- Activities related to research and conceptual development comes in the fourth sector.

OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Which of the following statements correctly defines the sex ratio?
 - (i) Number of females per 100 males.
 - (ii) Number of females per I000 males.
 - (iii) Number of boys and girls born within one year.
 - (vi) Number or females per 1000 males.
- Q.2. Which of the following is not correctly matched?
 - (i) Highest sex ratio in the world: Latvia
 - (ii) Triangular Population Pyramid: Japan
 - (iii) Working Population Category: 15-59
 - (iv) Agriculture, Forestry, Fishing etc.: Primary activities
- Q.3. One or the following is the reason for decrease in the number of men in the countries of Europe
 - (i) Excessive male emigration
 - (ii) High birth rate of women
 - (iii) High Mortality Rate of Men
 - (iv) Low birth rate of Men
- Q.4. The percentage of males is represented in which part of the age sex pyramid?
 - (i) Left
 - (ii) Right
 - (iii) Both
 - (iv) Only Middle
- Q.5. Which of the following statements is not correct?
 - (i) Age gender pyramids of Australia are bell-shaped.
 - (ii) The sex ratio in the continent of Asia is unbalanced.
 - (iii) The average sex ratio of the world population is 202 males per 100 females.
 - (iv) The lowest sex ratio in the world has been recorded in the United Arab Emirates.
- Q.6. The triangular population pyramid represents which of the following features?

- (i) Expanding population
- (ii) Stagnant Population
- (iii) Depressed population
- (iv) None of these.
- Q.7. With reference to the sex ratio, consider the following statements
 - 1. Sex ratio in areas with controlled gender discrimination is definitely adverse to women.
 - 2. The higher ratio of women to sex ratio indicates that their level is definitely better. Which of the statements given above is / are correct.
 - (i) Only 1
 - (ii) Only 2
 - (iii) Both 1 and 2
 - (iv) Neither 1 nor 2
- Q.8. Match
 - (a) Bell Shaped Pyramid.
- I. Low birth rate and low death rate
- (b) Ratio of women to men in the population
- III. Europe

II. Australia

- (c) Continent with highest sex ratio
- IV. Sex ratio
- (d) Mass population pyramid
 - Option
- I. a-i b-ii c-iii d-iv
- II. a-ii b-iv c-iii d-i
- III. a-iii b-iv c-i d-ii
- IV. a-iv b-ii c-iii d-i
- Q.9. Read the following statements carefully and select the appropriate option.
 - 1. Literacy. rate in India Population above 7 years of age. who can read, write and has ability to do arithmetic calculations with understanding.
 - 2. In western countries, the number of men is more than women in rural areas.

Option-

- (i) Both I and 2 are correct
- (ii) I is correct
- (iii) Only 2 is correct
- (iv) None of the above.
- Q.10. Which type of pyramid represents zero and negative population growth?
 - (i) Declining pyramid
 - (ii) The expanding population pyramid
 - (iii) Static Population Pyramid
 - (iv) None of these.

ANSWER

1. -ii, 2. -ii, 3. -i, 4. -i, 5. -iii, 6. -iii, 7. -ii, 8. -ii, 9. -ii, 10. -i

SHORT ANS QUESTIONS(THREE MARKS QUESTIONS)

- Q.11. What do you understand by population composition?
- Ans. Population composition shows Its characteristics of the population in which the analysis of age and gender, place of residence, tribes. language, religion. literacy, occupational characteristics etc. are studied.

Under this, rural urban composition and their characteristics are also studied. Population mobilization plays an important role in the formulation and determination of future development plans of a country.

- Q.12. Describe the factors responsible for age-gender imbalance in different parts of the world.
- Ans. Factors responsible for age-gender imbalance
 - **1. Birth rate and death rate -** Imbalance in sex ratio arises due to higher mortality in developing countries. Male birth is more than female birth and women are considered inferior in society.

- **2. Migration** Due to migration, the sex ratio is affected both in origin and destination. Male migration is high due to employment and education.
- **3. Rural and urban life -** The people of the villages settle in the cities due to employment and amenities, due to which there is a difference in the sex ratio in the urban life.
- **4. Socio-economic status -** Even in countries where the socio-economic status of women is pathetic, the number of women in each age group is less than that of men.
- Q.13. The proportion of literate population in a country is an indicator of its socioeconomic development, 'how'? Explain with appropriate factors.

OR

Why is there a huge disparity in literacy rates between different countries of the world? Give reasons

- Ans. Literacy rate is a qualitative aspect of the population of any country and the proportion of literate population in any country is an indicator of its social and economic development, because the following factors which affect the literacy rate.
 - Level of economic development: Low literacy rate is found in countries with less developed economy and high literacy rate in counties with advanced urban economy.
 - **Urbanization:** In areas where majority of the population resides in cities, literacy rate is high. Such as countries of Europe. But in countries where the percentage of rural population is high, literacy rate is low.
 - **Social status of women:** In agro-based economies, the position of women. is secondary. hence female literacy rate is found to be low. Whereas in countries with industrial economies, women have higher literacy rates.
- Q.14. Explain the difference between adverse sex ratio and favorable sex ratio.
- Ans. Adverse sex ratio: In countries where the number of women is less than men,

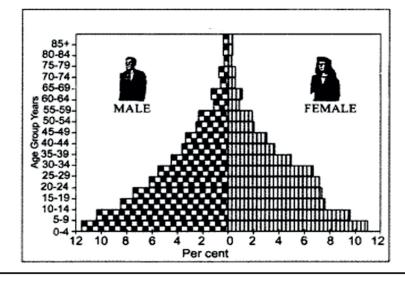
there are definitely adverse conditions for women. This happens due to female foeticide, female infanticide and domestic violence towards women. 72 countries of the world fall in this category. Example - Continent with adverse sex ratio - Asia.

Favorable sex ratio: In countries where there are more women than men, women are definitely in a favorable position. Favorable conditions and government policies for women education, employment and development of their lives create favorable conditions for women. 139 countries of the world fall in this category. Example - Continent with favorable sex ratio - Europe.

Q.15. The ratio of the population working in different segments of the business structure is a good indicator of the economic levels of a nation,- (Give reasonable argument in support of the statement.)

Ans. This statement is true, because —

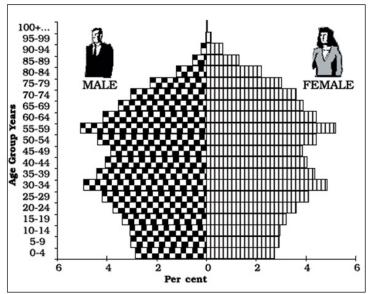
- Only in a developed economy with industries and infrastructure, more workers can be accommodated in the secondary and tertiary sectors.
- If the economy is underdeveloped or primitive, then the proportion of people engaged in primary activities is high. In such a state only natural resources are exploited.
- Q.16. Answer the following questions based on the picture below —



- (i) What type of pyramid is this pyramid? Ans. Widely shaped triangular pyramid.
- (ii) Which age group has the highest population in this pyramid and why? Ans. 0-4 years of age or below. Due to the high birth rate.
- (iii) Population of which type of countries does this pyramid represent? Give an example.

Ans. It is a model of Least Developed Countries. Examples- Bangladesh. Mexico. Nigeria etc.

Q.17. Answer the following questions based on the picture below-



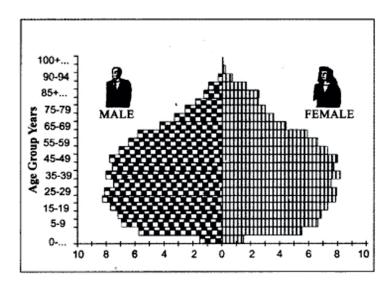
Source: Demographic Year Book, 2009-10

- (i) Write the name of this pyramid.Ans. Bell-shaped pyramid or fixed population.
- (ii) Write two features of this pyramid.

Ans. a) It gets curved towards the top.

b) It has a nearly uniform birth rate and death rate.

- (iii) Write the names of countries with this type of population pyramid. Ans. Australia, Sweden, United States of America etc.
- Q.18. Answer the following question based on the picture below-



Source: Demographic Year Book, 2009-10

- (i) Write the name of this pyramid. Ans. Declining Population Pyramid.
- (ii) Write the features of this pyramid.

Ans. 1) Its base is narrow and the head is curved.

- 2) It shows low birth rate and low death rate.
- 3) The growth rate in it is zero or negative.
- (iii) Name some countries with this type of population pyramid.

Ans. Japan, Latvia and Estonia etc.

- Q.19. How has increasing opportunities for education and employment affected the age and sex ratio? Explain
- Ans. While increasing opportunities for education and employment indicate development, on the other hand it is important factors of migration —

- 1. Due to increasing opportunities for education and employment, the male population migrates heavily, due to which there are serious imbalances in age and gender structure.
- 2. Male population and people between 20-60 years of age become more at the destination, ie the productive population, while the dependent population and female population increases in the areas of origin.
- 3. Excess of migration of men is a result of increasing opportunities for education and employment. For example, the sex ratio in the United Arab Emirates is adverse due to migrant men and similar adversity can also be seen in cities like Delhi and Mumbai.
- Q.20. The sex ratio of an area is an indicator of the social and economic status of that region. Explain this statement with appropriate arguments. (Multidisciplinary question)
- Ans. The ratio between the number of males to females in the population is called the sex ratio. The sex ratio of any region is an indicator of the social and economical status of that region, because-
 - 1. In areas where gender discrimination is uncontrolled, the sex ratio is definitely adverse to women.
 - 2. In countries / regions where the practice of female foeticide, female infanticide and domestic violence against women is prevalent, the sex ratio will definitely be adverse to women.
 - 3. The main reason for this is the declining economic level of the women or society there. due to which the society is not able to become literate and become aware towards women.
- Q.21. The age structure shows which characteristics of the population.
- Ans. The age structure represents the number of people in different classes. Based on this, it can be determined what percentage of people in different age groups. If the number of age group 0-14 is more in the population then the ratio of dependent population will be higher. Due to which economic growth will slow down.

Working population or earning population is more likely to happen when the population is more in 15-59 of age group, it helps in exploiting the resources of the country.

- Q.22. Describe the characteristics of rural-urban composition of the population with examples.
- Ans. Following are the characteristics of rural-urban composition of the population
 - 1. Rural and urban division of the population is based on their place of residence.
 - 2. Rural and urban life differs from each other in livelihood and social conditions.
 - 3. Age gender composition. occupational structure, population density and levels of development differ in rural and urban areas.
 - 4. Western countries (Canada. Finland etc.) have more males than females in the rural areas. Whereas in urban areas. the number of women is more than men.
 - 5. Conversely, the sex ratio is also higher for men due to male predominant migration in Asia and urban areas.
- Q.23. Give three reasons for the sex ratio to be unfavorable for women. In which continent are most of the countries with adverse and favorable sex ratio of women?
- Ans. The average sex ratio of the world's population is 102 males per 100 females. The following are the main reasons for the sex ratio to be unfavorable for women.
 - (i) Female foeticide.
 - (ii) Domestic violence towards women.
 - (ii) Low socio-economic status of women.

Continent with adverse sex ratio - Asia.

Continent with favorable sex ratio - Europe.

Q.24. How do the rural urban gender composition in developed countries like Canada and Finland differ from the rural urban sex ratio of Zimbabwe and Nepal. Explain the reasons responsible for this difference.

Ans.

- 1. In countries like Finland and Canada there are more males than females in rural areas. Whereas in countries like Nepal and Zimbabwe, women are more in rural areas.
- 2. In developed countries like Canada and Finland, the number of women is more than men in cities whereas in developing countries like Nepal

- and Zimbabwe, the situation is opposite. There are more males in the cities.
- 3. Due to greater employment potential in developed countries, women migrate from village to township in urban areas. Hence the number of women is more in the cities.
- 4. In developed countries, agricultural work in rural areas is mechanized, heavy and male dominated, so there is more employment potential for men in rural areas than in cities. Therefore the number of males in rural area is found more in these countries.
- 5. In developing countries, there is a greater sense of security for women in cities and men migrate from village to cities for employment, so in countries like Nepal and Zimbabwe, more men tend to live in cities and women in rural areas.
- Q.25. Ageing of the population is a process that increases the share of the elderly population. The aging population is a new phenomenon of the 20th century. In which parts of the world is this phenomenon prevalent? Give two reasons and consequences of this phenomenon.
- Ans. The aging of the population is a phenomenon in which the proportion of the elderly population becomes proportionately larger. It is a phenomenon of the developed countries of the world of the 20th century.

Reasons-

- 1. Parameter of health and hygienes is high in most developed countries.
- 2. The social structures and economic levels in these countries are very high, due to which life expectancy is high and the proportion of elderly or ageing population in the population has increased.

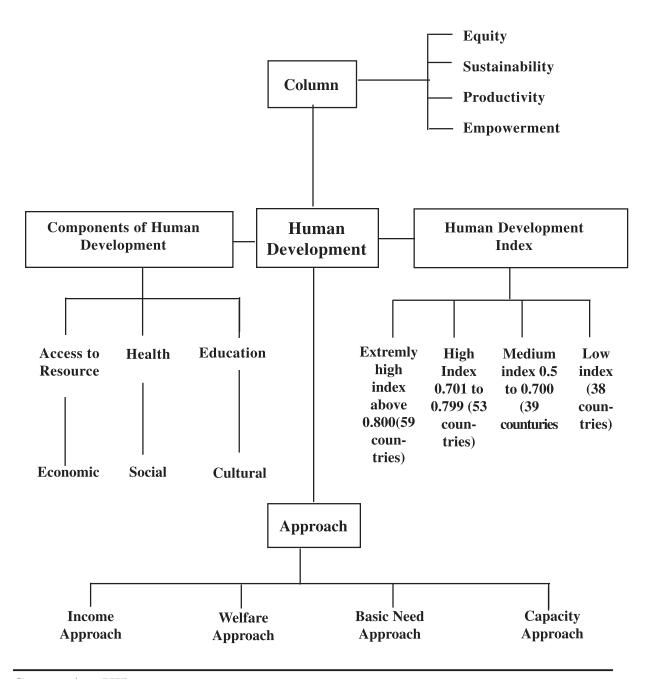
Results —

- 1. Due to involvement in career an other interests, people of the developed countries give less time and take less interest in their family so the proportion of children and youth in the population is decreasing. Which is not good for the future.
- 2. In these countries, there is a huge expenditure on the health care of the elderly population.
- Q.26. Explain the 5 components under the population composition.
- Ans. Following are the 5 components of population composition-

- 1. Age structure: The number of people in different age groups is called the age structure of the population. There are them age groups under it I. Child class (0— 14 years), 2. Adult class (15-59 years), 3. Old age class (above 60 years).
 - The persons below 14 years and above 60 years are considered as dependent population and persons with the age between 15 to 60 is considered as earning population.
- **2. Gender composition :** The sex ratio in the population is an indicator of the balance between men and women. It is measured as the number of females per thousand males. The sex ratio in Asia is low. Whereas in Europe, including Russia, sex ratio is in favour of women.
- **3. Literacy:** It is a qualitative feature of the population which is indicative of socio-economic development of an area. The level of economic development is both cause and consequence of literacy.
- **4. Rural and urban mobilization:** It is decided on the basis of place of residence of the people. This is also necessary, because rural and urban lives differ from each other in livelihood and social conditions.
- 5. Occupational Structure: The form of the population engaged in different remunerative business functions and earning a livelihood from these functions are called occupational structure. The countries where most of the people are engaged in primary activities will have low economic status and the economic system will be based on agriculture. Where most people are engaged in secondary and tertiary occupations, their economic standard will be high.

Chapter - 4
Human Develpoment

Concept Map



OBJECTIVE QUESTION

- Q.1. Consider the following statements in the context of growth and development.
 - 1. Development is quantitative and absolute.
 - 2. Growth means a qualitative change and this is price relative.
 - 3. Growth can be both positive and negative, but development occurs when positive growth occurs.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct.

- (a) Only 1 and 2
- (b) Only 3
- (c) Only 2 and 3
- (d) 1, 2 and 3
- Q.2. With reference to Human Development consider the following statements-
 - 1. The concept of Human Development was formulated by Amartya Sen and Mehboob Ul Haq.
 - 2. Environment is the focal point of all types of development in the concept of Human Development.
 - 3. The basic objective of Human Development is to generate conditions in which people can lead meaningful life.

Which of the statements given above is / are not correct?

- (a) Only 1 and 2
- (b) Only 2 and 3
- (c) Only 3
- (d) 1, 2, 3
- Q.3. Which of the following is / are components of Human Development
 - 1. Equity
 - 2. Sustainability
 - 3. Productivity
 - 4. Empowerment

The choice

- (a) Only 1, 2, 4
- (b) Only 3
- (c) Only 2 and 4
- (d) 1, 2, 3, 4
- Q.4. Choose the correct option after proper matching.
 - 1. Income approach
 - 2. Welfare approach
 - 3. Basic requirement approach
 - 4. Capacity Approach

- i. Creation of human facilities for access to resources
- ii. Provision of basic requirements
- iii. Expenditure on human welfare by the Government
- iii. Expenditure on human welfare by the Government

The choice

- a) 1-iv, 2-iii, 3-ii, 4-i,
- b) 1-iii, 2-ii, 3-ii, 4-i,
- c) 1-i, 2-iii, 3-ii, 4-iv,
- d) 1-iv, 2-i, 3-ii, 4-iii,
- Q.5. Which one of the following pairs is not correctly matched?
 - (a) Equity To provide equal access to the opportunities for each person.
 - (b) Sustainability Continuity in the availability of opportunities
 - (c) Productivity Using human resources with future in mind.
 - (d) Empowerment Empowerment of socially and economically backward groups.
- Q.6. With reference to the Human Development index consider the following statements-
 - 1. The Human Development Index ranks countries on the basis of performance in key areas such as health, education and access to resources.

- 2. The Human Development index is based on a score between 0 and 1.
- 3. The closer the Human Development Index score is to 1, the lower the level of human Development.

Which of the statements given above is / are not correct?

- (a) Only 1 and 2
- (b) Only 3
- (c) Only 1
- (d) Only 2 and
- Q.7. Which of the following publishes the Human Development Report (HDR)?
 - (a) United Nations Development Program (UNDP)
 - (b) World Health Organization (WHO)
 - (c) World Bank
 - (d) World Economic Forum (WEF)
- Q.8. When was the first report of the Human Development Index released.
 - (a) 1985
 - (b) 1987
 - (c) 1980
 - (d) 1990
- Q.9. With reference to the measurement of Human Development, consider the following statements-
 - 1. The Human Development Index measures attainments in Human Development.
 - 2. Human Development is measured in terms of action for access to resources.
 - 3. The life expectancy at birth is chosen as an indicator of health in the Human Development Index.

Which of the statements given above is / are correct.

- (a) Only 1 and 2
- (b) Only 3
- (c) Only 2 and 3
- (d) 1, 2 and 3
- Q.10. According to Human Development Report (2018), which is the correct

decreasing order of Human Development index in the world?

- (a) Germany, Ireland, Australia, Switzerland, Norway
- (b) Ireland, Germany, Norway, Australia, Switzerland
- (c) Norway, Switzerland, Australia, Ireland, Germany
- (d) Australia, Norway, Ireland, Germany, Switzerland

ANSWER

1. (b); 2. (a); 3. (d); 4. (a); 5. (c); 6. (b); 7. (d); 8. (d); 9. (d); 10. (d)

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS (SHORT ANSWER)

Q.11. 'Development refers to a qualitative change that is always price relative.' Verify this statement by any three arguments.

Ans.

- 1. Development is considered meaningful only when there is an improvement in the current conditions.
- 2. Development occurs when positive growth occurs.
- 3. But development is not just positive growth. Development occurs at a time when there is a positive change in quality. That is, if et some place, as the population increases, the quality of its basic services also increases, then it will be called development with growth.
- Q.12. Explain the difference between development and growth.

Ans.

- 1. The growth indicates the quantitative price relative change with reference to time. It can be both positive and negative.
- 2. Development refers to qualitative change, which is absolute.
- 3. Development cannot happen unless there is a positive growth in the present condition. It is an indicator of qualitative and complete positive change.
- Q.13. How has Human Development been described by Mehboob-ul-Haq? Ans.
 - 1. Development increases options for humans.
 - 2. Human Development brings meaningful improvements in life.

- 3. Development is variable, its purpose is to create conditions in which people can live meaningful lives.
- Q.14. Explain any three characteristics of the 'welfare approach' of Human Development in the world.

Ans. Key features of the welfare approach of Human Development-

- This approach sees human being as the beneficiary of all developmental activities.
- This approach argues for higher government expenditure on education, health, social security and amenities.
- People are not participants in development but they are only passive recipients.
- The government is responsible for increasing the level of Human Development by spending maximum on welfare.
- Q.15. Explain the 'basic necessity approach' of Human Development in the world?Ans. This approach was originally presented by the International Labor Organization.
 - Six minimum requirements such as health, education, food, water supply, sanitation and housing were identified and the fulfillment of these requirements is necessary at the first instance.
 - II will not emphasize on the growth of human choices.
 - Emphasis was laid on system for provision of basic needs.
- Q.16. Why do low or high levels of Human Development appear different countries of the world? Illustrue your answer by giving the appropriate reason?

Ans. High Level Countries:

- In these countries, the government invests heavily in services such as education and health, and it is the government's priority to provide these services.
- Political distrubance and social instability is not found there.
- Thers is not much social diversity in these countries.
- Examples are Norway, Iceland, Australia, Luxembourg, Canada etc.

Countries With Low HDI

- Only necessary investment is made by the government in social services.
- In these countries, there is more expenditure in defense and internal peace.

- The pace of economic development is slow in most countries.
- Most of the countries are going through political disturbances, civil war, social instability-famine or diseases.
- Q.17. Explain any three features of the 'Income Approach' of human Development. Ans. Salient features of income development approach of human Development-
 - Income approach is one of the oldest approaches to Human Development in the world. According to the idea, Human Development will happen only by increasing income.
 - In this approach, human Development is seen to be associated with income.
 - When the level of income is high, the level of-development will also be high.
- Q.18. Describe the main indices of the Human Development Index.

Ans. Three major indices of measurement of human Development.

- 1. Health- The indicator chosen to evaluate health is life expectancy at birth, which is an indicator of a long and healthy life.
- 2. Education- Adult literacy rate and gross enrollment ratio are considered as the basis for evaluating education. It shows man's access to knowledge.
- 3. Access to resources- It reveals the purchasing power of the people. It is an indicator of economic strength.
- Q.19. How sustainability is necessary for human Development?

Ans. Sustainability is essential for Human Development us follow-

- Sustainability means sustainable availability of opportunities.
- All environmental, financial and human resources should be used keeping future in mind so that every generation gets equal opportunities.
- Misuse of any one of these resources will reduce opportunities for future generation.
- Q.20. "Size and per capita income of a country / region is not directly related to Human Development"- How? Explain

OR

"International comparisons of Human Development are interesting." Explain with an appropriate example.

- Ans. The size and per capita income of a region is not directly related to Human Development because,
 - Often, the performance of small countries has been better than big countries in Human Development. The level of Human Development is measured by education, health and economic development, which are not affected by the size of the country.
 - Sometimes rank of relatively poorer nations in Human Development has been higher country higher than the wealthier neighbors.
 - Small economies like Sri Lanka and Tobago have higher Human Development index than India, while Kerala's performance in Human Development is far better than Punjab and Gujarat despite lower per capita income.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS WITH 5 MARKS

- Q.21. Describe the various approach to Human Development?
- Ans. There are many approaches to problems related to Human Development. Some of the important approaches are as follows:
 - **Income approach** it is one of the oldest approaches to Human Development. In this, Human Development is seen to be associated with income. Higher level of income indicates higher level of development
 - Welfare approach This approach seen human being the beneficiary or the target of all developmental activities. The government is responsible for increasing the levels of Human Development by spending maximum on welfare.
 - **Basic Need Approach** This approach was originally proposed by the International Labor Organization. It identified six minimum requirements such as education, food, water supply, sanitation, health and housing. The question of human choices has been ignored in these.
 - Capacity Approach This approach is linked with Amatriya Sen. Building human capabilities in areas of access to resources is the key to increased human Development.
- Q.22. How is the Human Development Index measured? Explain in context of important indicators.
- Ans. According to the United Nations, 'Human Development is the process of

developing and changing people's choices. The Human Development Index ranks countries on the basis of performance in key areas such as health, education and access to resources. This sequence is based on a score between 0 and 1, obtained from the records of Human Development indicators of a country. Important indicators of this-

- 1. Life expectancy at birth is considered an indicator for evaluating health. Higher life expectancy means people have more opportunities to live longer and healthier lives.
- 2. Adult literacy rate and gross enrollment ratio reflect education, which is determined by the number of persons above six years who can read, write any language and do calculations.
- 3. Access to resources is measured in terms of purchasing power. Each of these dimensions is weighted by 1/3 weight and the Human Development Index is the sum of the marks assigned to all these dimensions.
- Q.23. What do you mean by Human Development? Describe the four major pillars (components) of Human Development'?
- Ans. According to Dr. Mahboob-ul-Haq-

"Human Development" means development that enhances people's choices and improves their lives. The basic objective of development is to generate conditions in which people can lead meaningful lives."

Four pillars of Human Development

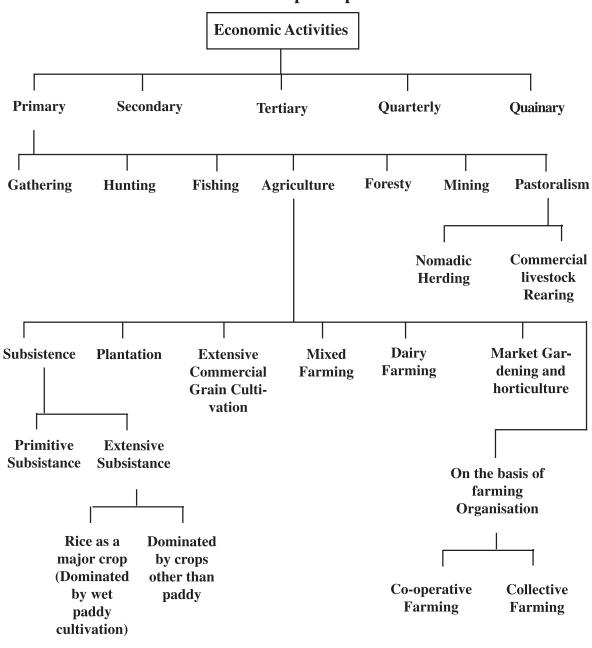
- 1. Equality: Equality is equal opportunity for every person to get equal participation in available opportunities. Opportunities available to people should be equal without consideration of gender, species, income and caste discrimination in the context of India.
- 2. Sustainability: Sustainableness means continuity in the achievement of opportunities. This requires that every generation get equal opportunities. Futuer generations should be assured with environmental, financial and human resources. Misuse of any of these resources will reduce opportunities for future generations.
- 3. Productivity: Here the term productivity is used to refer to the productivity of human labor. The productivity of human labor must be continuously improved by enabling people. Efforts to increase the knowledge of the

- people and provide better medical facilities to them will improve their work capacity.
- 4. Empowerment: Empowering the economically and socially backward people in every way, so that they are free to make choices.

LESSON -5

PRIMARY ACTIVITIES

Concept Map



MAIN REGIONS OF VARIOUS FORMS OF AGRICULTURE

1. **NOMADIC** North Africa, Tundra region of Europe and Asia, South western Africa and Medagaskar islands HERDING 2. <u>Commercial</u> New Zealand, Australia, Argentina, United Livestock Rearing State of America. 3. Primitine -Africa, Tropical region of Southern and region Subsistence: of America. **Agriculture** Extensine Steppebe in Eurasia, Prairies in North America, 4. Welds is South Africa. Downs in Austrilia and commercial:conterburry in New Zealand Grain Cultivaliou 5. Dairy Farming:-North western Europe, eastern Canada and New Zealand, Australia and Tasmania. 6. Floriculture:-Netherland (Specially Tulips) 7. Horticulture:-Western Europe and north America. Development part of the world. (North America, 8. Mixed Forming:-North West Europe,) Regions around Mediterranean see in Europe 9. Mediterranean :-Agriculture and in North Africa 10. <u>Co-Operative</u>:-Denmark, Netherland, Belgium, Sweden, Italy **Farming** etc. Soviet Union. 11. Collective forming:-

OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTION

- Q.1. Read the following statement and then choose one of the given options.
 - 1. Transport and other related services are included secondary activities.
 - 2. Primary activities are dependent directly on natural environment.
 - a) only 1 is right
 - b) only 2 is right
 - c) 1 and 2 both are right
 - d) both are false statements
- Q.2. The farming of citrus fruit is the characteristics of which type of forming?
 - a) Mediterranean Farming
 - b) Mixed Farming
 - c) Co- Operative farming
 - d) Plantation farming
- Q.3. Read the following statement about pastoralism and tell which one is wrong statement.
 - a) In nomadic herding, herders migrate seasonally.
 - b) In commercial live stock rearing, one type of animal is rearal at a place.
 - c) Nomadic reading is capital intensive
 - d) Rearing of animals in ranching is organised on a scientific basic.
- Q.4. Intensive subsistence agriculture is found in which part of the world?
 - a) Middle Asia
 - b) Monsoon Asia
 - c) North Asia
 - d) North America
- Q.5. Which of the following statement is related to Truck farming?
 - a) The regions which produce food grains.
 - b) The regions which produce vegetables.
 - c) The regions which produce fruits only.
 - d) The regions which give importance to both crop cultivation and animal husbandary.
- Q.6. 'Kolkhoz' term is related to:-

- a) Co-operative farming
- b) Dairy farming
- c) Collecting farming
- d) Mixed farming
- Q.7. Gujjars, Bakarwals, Gaddis and bhotias live in the mountaneous regions of
 - a) Himalayan
 - b) Rocky
 - c) Alps
 - d) Anders
- Q.8. The 'Chickle' is made from:
 - a) Leaves of tree
 - b) A ring of nut
 - c) Milky Juice of Zapota tree
 - d) Animals of nut
- Q.9. Which among the following is a wrong pair
 - a) Cocoa and coffee plantation: West Africa
 - b) Tea gardens : Sri Lankac) Rubber plantation : Malaysiad) Sugarcane : Brazil
- Q.10. Read the following statements and find which one is wrong?
 - a) Surface mining is also called open cast mining.
 - b) Shaft method is used for underground mining
 - c) The shaft method is risky.
 - d) Open cast mining is more costly than shaft method.

ANSWER

1. b, 2. a, 3. c, 4. b, 5. b, 6. c, 7. a, 8. c, 9. d, 10. d

QUESTIONS WITH THREE MARKS-

- Q.11. Explain the factors responseble for the success of dairy forming.
- Ans. Dairy forming is the most advanced and efficient type of rearing of milch animals

Capital- It is highly capital intensive. Large sheds are made. Storage facility for fodder and other things are managed.

Zechnigus- All the work form feeding animals to miliching them is done by machines.

Modern Ways- Cattlebreading, their health care and other veterinary needs are fulltilled in modern ways.

Labour Intensive-

Transportation- The milk products needs refrigeration, pasteurisation and proper storage facilities. So a well developed transportation system is needed.

Q.12. Explain the characteristics of mediterranean agriculture.

Ans.

- i. It is practised in the countries on either side of the meditirranean sea.
- ii. This region is an important supplier of citrus fruits. Viticulture or grape cultvation is speciality of this agriculture
- iii. Olives and figs are other produce of this type of agriculture. Vegetables are grown in winter.
- iv. Main countries includes from tunisia to Atlantic coast, Southern califorinia central chile, Southern western part of Australia.
- Q.13. What is market gardening and horticulture? write its main features.
- Ans. This type of gardening specialise in the cultivation of high value crops such as vegetables, fruit and flowers solely for urban market.
 - i. Good transportation link with market is needed.
 - ii. Labour and capital intensine- In all the process of growing vegetables and fruit labour as will as money is needed.
 - iii. Modern technology-It lays emphasis on the use of irrigation, HYV seeds, fertilisers etc.
 - iv. Greenhouses and artificial heating is also needed in colden regions
 - v. This forming is also called truck farming
- Q.14. Give the difference between nomadic herding and commerial Livestock Rearing. Describe the ways of life of nomadic herders in the world.
- Ans. The following are the main characteristies of nomadic herding.
 - i. This is a primitive subsistence activity.
 - ii. In this herders rely on animale for food, clothing, shelter, tools and transport.

- iii. They move from one place to another along with their livestoek, depending on the amount and quality of pastures and water.
- iv. A wide variety of animals is kept in differet regions like sheep, gooda, camels and cattles
- v. The regions are Atlantre shore of North Africa, Mangloia and central China
- vi. Due to political boundaries and new settlement plans of countries this activity is shrinking.

Commercial Livestork Rearing

- i. It is organised and capital intensive
- ii. Commercial livestock rearing is associated with western cultures on permanent ranches.
- iii. There ranches cover large areas and are divided into a number of parcels and these were fenced.
- iv. Only one type of animal is reared at one place like sheep, cattle, goat and horses.
- v. All the work related to animals is organised on a scientific basis
- vi. Breeolign, genetic inprovement, disease control are emphasine for the animals
- vii. Important countries are USA, New zealand Austraila, Argentina and Uruguay.

(write according marks)

Q.15. Write the mainfeatues of Mixed farming and mention their areas also. Ans.

- i. In this type of farming equal emphasis is laid on crop cultivation and animal husbandry. Animals like cattle sheep, pigs and poultry provide the main income along with crops.
- ii. Main crops are barley, oats, rye, maize, fodder and root crops
- iii. Main regions are north western europe, eastern north America, eurasia etc.
- iv. High capital expenditure on form machinary and building, fertilisers and green manures.

- Q.16. What do you understand by primitive subsistence agriculture? what are its main features?
- Ans. Primitine subsistence agriculture is in which the agriculture is done with very primitive tools and methods and produce is consumed by the former Main features:
 - i. It is also called shifting agriculture because forms are shifted in the forest.
 - ii. The vegetation is cleared by fire, therefore it is also called slash and burn agriculture.
 - iii. Primitive tools and ashes as fertiliser are used
 - iv. It is known with different names in different regions. Jhuming in north eastern states, Milpa in central America and Mexico and Ladang in Indonesin and Malayasia.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS)

- Q.17. What are two types of intensive subsistence agriculture that prevail in the world. Write the main characteristics of both types:
- Ans. There are two types of intensive subsistence agriculture. In this type of agriculture farmers use the land intensively and yield per unit area is high.
 - I Intensine subsistence agriculture dominated by wet paddy cultivation.
 - a. Main crop is rice
 - b. Due to high density of population land holdigs are small
 - c. Use of machinary is limited and agricultural operations are done by manual labour
 - d. Farm yard manure is used for fertility of the soil.
 - e. The yield per unit are high but per person is low.

Main regions are countries of Monsoon Asia

- II- Intensive subsistence agriculture dominated by crops other than paddy
- i. In many parts of Monsoon Asia farmers could not grow paddy due to the difference in relief, climate and soil.
- ii. The main crops are wheat, soyabean, barley and sorghum.
- iii. Northern China, Manchuria and Japan are some of the main regions. western part of Indo-Gougetic plains are the main part is India for this type of agriculture.
- Q.18. Write the main characteristics of plantation Agriculture (2017,2019).

Ans.

- i. This is a type of agriculture in which a crop shown once give yield for many years.
- ii. Tea, coffee, cocoa, Rubber, cotton, Banana sugarcanes are some of the important plantation crops.
- iii. This type of farming has large estates or plantation
- iv. Large capital investment is needed.
- v. Technical support, scientitic methods of cultivation single crop specialisation and cheap labour are essential needs for this type of agriculture.
- vi. India for tea gardens, Malayasia for its rubber plantation, philippines for its sugarcane plantation are fomous in the world.
- Q.19. Gathering and hunting are economic activities for tribes. In modern times gathering is becoming commercialized, Explain.

or

Gathering is primitive economic activities but today gathering has not gained enough importance globly. Discuss. -(comptt 2017)

Ans. Gathering is oldest ecomomic activity known. These are carried out at different levels with different orientation. It is practised in regions with harsh climatic conditions

This type of activity requires a small amount of capital investment and operates at very low level of technology. Gatherers collect valuable plants such as leaves, barks of tree itc. They sell it often simple processing

In modern times some gathering is becoming market oriented and has become commercial. For example medicinal plants are in great demand. The bark of sinchona tree is used for qunine. Many leaves are used for beverages, drugs and cosmetics. Rubber, chewing gums and different types of oils are also depends upon gathering.

But products of such an activity can not compete in the fast growing modern market. Synthetic products being at lower price have replaced many items which ware earlies supplied by the gatherers.

Q.20. Write any five characteristies of commercial livestock rearing (CBSE 2014)

or

Commercial live stock rearing is a capital intensive and organised activitiy.

Descuss (comptt 2017)

Ans. See Ans of Que No 14

Q.21. Giving the difference between co-operatine farming and collective farming, explain both

Ans.

Co-operative forming

- i. A group of farmers forms a co-operatine society and pool their resources voluntarily.
- ii. It enable them to do farming in more efficient and profitable way.
- iii. In this proces individual farms remain intact. Only seeds, manure etc are resourced collectinely.
- iv. It helps farmers to procure all important inputs of farming sell the products at the most favourable terms.
- v. It is successful in many European countries like Denmark, Netherlands, Belgium, sweden, Italy etc.

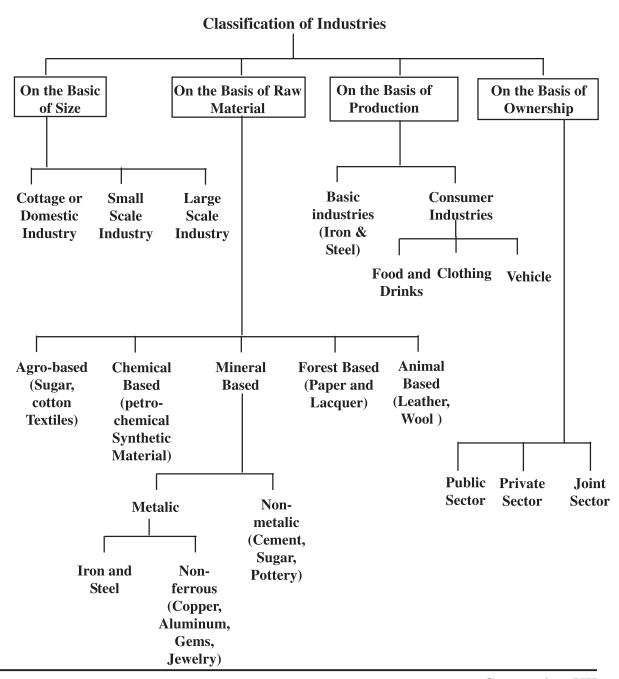
Collectine forming

- i. This types of farming is based on social ownership of the means of producton and collective labour.
- ii. It was introduced to boost agricultural production for self sufficiency.
- iii. The formers used to pool even their land. However they were allowed to retain very small plots to grow crops in order to meet their daily requirements.
- Q.22. What are the factors that affect mining activity? why are developed economies retreating from mining?

Chapter-6

SECONDARY ACTIVITIES

Concept Diagram



OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

Q.1.	Cement industry falls under which type of industry? (a) Agro Based (b) Chemical Based (c) Mineral Based (d) Forest Based
Q.2.	Which one of the following is not related to secondary sector? (a) Basket Knitting (b) Textile Manufacturing (c) Steel Smelting (d) Insurance Activity
Q.3.	 Which one of the following pairs correctly matches? (a) Automated Vehicle Industry - Las Angeles (b) Shipbuilding Industry — Lusaka (c) Iron and Steel Industry Petersberg (d) Aircraft manufacturing industry — Florence
Q.4.	Which of the following industries will fall under the category of freelance industry? (a) Motor Car Industry (b) Sugar Industry (c) Iron and Steel Industry (d) Furniture Industry
Q.5.	An example of a Technology Pole in India is (a) Ahmedabad (b) Bangalore (c) Delhi (d) Lucknow
Q.6.	Professional workers are calledcollar workers and real production workerscollar workers? (a) White, Blue

- (b) Yellow, Red
- (c) White, Golden
- (d) None of the above
- Q.7. Which of the following types of industries are owned by both the private and public sector?
 - (a) Public Sector Industries
 - (b) Private Sector Industries
 - (c) Joint Sector Industries
 - (d) All of the above
- Q.8. To convert raw iron into steel, what is added to it?
 - (a) Manganese
 - (b) Aluminum
 - (c) Copper
 - (d) Coal
- Q.9. Which of the following statements is incorrect for the cotton textile industry?
 - (a) Europe alone imports half of the world's cotton.
 - (b) Factories with power looms employ less labor.
 - (c) Handloom sector requires more workers.
 - (d) India is far behind the world in cotton textile industry.
- Q.10. Which of the following is a forest based industry?
 - (a) Artificial wear
 - (b) Lacquer Industry
 - (c) Woolen Clothing
 - (d) Petrochemicals

ANSWERS

1. (c), 2. (d), 3. (..), 4. (c), 5. (b), 6. (a), 7. (c), 8. (a), 9. (d), 10. (b)

SHORT ANS. TYPE QUESTIONS

Q.11. Discuss any 3 features of small scale industry?

Differentiate between small scale and large scale industry.

Ans. Small Scale Industries:

- 1. Manufacturing site: In this type of industry, the manufacturing site is situated outside the residence.
- 2. Raw material: It uses local raw materials.
- 3. Employment Opportunities: Employment opportunities are more in this industry due to which purchasing power of local residents increases.

Large Scale Industries

- 1. The product is made with developed technology and skilled workers.
- 2. The products so produced are sold in the vast market.
- 3. It also has a higher quantity of production.
- 4. More capital and different type of raw materials are used.

Q.12. Classify industries on the basis of ownership.

Ans. Classification of industry on the basis of ownership —

- 1. Public Sector
- 2. Private Sector
- 3. Joint Sector
- 1. Public Sector:
- Such industries are under the government.
- Only the government manages them.
- Many industries in India are among the public sector including iron and steel industry.
- This happens in most socialist and communist countries.
- 2. Private Sector:
- The owner of such industries is an individual or a company.
- Individuals or private companies manage these industries.
- This system exists in capitalist countries.
- Tata Group, Birla, Reliance Industry in India are examples of private sector.
- 3. Joint Sector:

- Some industries are run by the government and private companies jointly.
- Hindustan Petroleum Corporation Limited (HPCL) and Mittal Energy Limited Partnership is an example of this.
- Q.13. What is meant by cottage industry? Describe its main features.
- Ans. Cottage industries are those industries in which people, together with their family members, manufacture items of daily use at home with the help of local raw materials.
 - 1. Capital and means of transportation do not affect them industries.
 - 2. Both raw materials and markets are available locally.
 - 3. No power driven machine is required. Only simple hand tools are used.
- Q.14. Explain any three characteristics of handloom industries. in the world.
- Ans. The characteristics of the handloom industry
 - 1. Handloom industry requires more workers.
 - 2. It provides employment to semi-skilled workers.
 - 3. There is less capital requirement.
 - 4. Under this, the work of spinning, weaving etc. of cotton is done.
- Q.15. Explain any three features of freelance industries?
- Ans. Features of Freelance Industries-
 - 1. Freelance industries are located in a wide variety of locations.
 - 2. They do not depend on any specific type of raw material.
 - 3. These industries depend on mobilization
 - 4. They produce in small quantities.
 - 5. There is also less need for workers in these industries.
 - 6. Generally, these industries do not cause pollution.

Q.16. What are the factors affecting the establishment of industries.

OR

Location of industries depends on what elements?

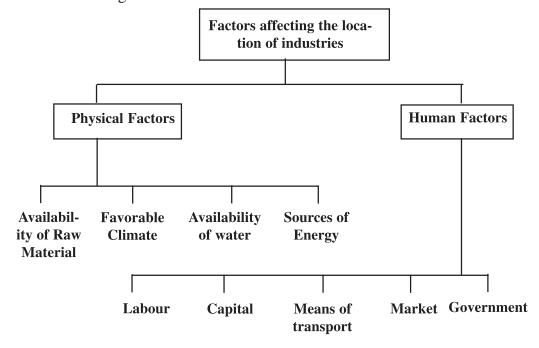
)R

Explain the factors that affect the location of industries in the world. OR Explain any five factors affecting the state of industries in the world with examples.

OR

Why do large scale industries choose different conditions? Explain any four factors affecting the industrial location.

Ans.



- 1. Availability of raw materials: Raw materials for the industry should be relatively cheap and easily transportable. Industries based on heavy weight cheap and depleting resources and perishable materials should be located near the source of raw materials. Such as iron and steel industry, sugar Industry.
- 2. Favorable climate: Some industries are set up only in areas with special type of climate. For example, in the development of cotton textile industry in South India the moist environment has helped. Spinning of cotton cloth is made easier due to moisture. Establishing industries in extremely cold

- and extremely hot regions is a difficult task.
- 3. Source of energy: Industries that require more power are placed near sources of energy, such as aluminum industry.
- 4. Availability of labour: With increasing mechanization, automated machines etc., the dependence on labor in industrits has been reduced, yet some types of industries still require skilled labor. Most industries are located in places with cheap labor availability. Switzerland's watch industry and Japan's electronic industry rely on the strength of skilled and efficient workers.
- 5. Capital: For the successful development of any industry, it is essential to have sufficient capital available. The factory requires land, machines, raw materials, sufficient capital to pay salaries to workers. In Europe, for example, there is a considerable amount of capital available and industry is highly developed as well
- Q.17. Name the main features of modern large-scale manufacturing?

Ans. Following are the characteristics of large scale manufacturing in modern times.

- 1. Specialization of skills: Due to the large scale production in modern industries, skill gets specialized in which worker continuously does the same type of work. Workers are trained for specified work.
- 2. Mechanization: Mechanization refers to the use of machines to complete a task. Modem industry is the advanced stage of automated mechanization.
- 3. Technological innovation: Modern industries have included new technological knowledge, research and development in which the quality control in manufacturing, disposal of waste and elimination of inefficiency and fighting against pollution arc the main ones.
- 4. Organizational Infrastructure and Stratification: In addition to large scale manufacturing, organizational structure is large, capital investment is heavy and there is predominance of administrative officer among employees.
- Q.18. What are the main trends of modern industrial activities?

Ans. Following are the main features of modern industrial activities.

- 1. The modern manufacturing process is dependent on a lot of devices. State-of-the-art and advanced instruments are used.
- 2. By dividing / classifying tasks, people with specific skills are employed

in the work.

- 3. On the management level administrative and official classes are appointed.
- 4. Capital investment is high. Efforts are made to reduce cost of production.
- Q.19. What are the benefits of setting up small scale industries?

OR

Small-scale industries are more profitable in terms of employment generation. Explain the significance of this statement, describing the features of small scale industries.

Ans. Features

- 1. Manufacturing under this category of industries is outside the residence.
- 2. The raw material is local but the workers are semi-skilled.
- 3. Small instruments used by means of power are used. If there are many small scale industries working instead of one large scale industry, then there are more jobs in it.
- 4. Local people get employment, their income increases and their purchasing power also increases.
- 5. Increase in local demand for new materials energizes the producers of raw materials. Increased purchasing power increases production when there is employment. Therefore, countries like India, China, Indonesia etc. have encouraged such type of industries.
- Q.20. Explain the characteristics of high technology industry and explain why they develop in the periphery areas of cities.

Ans.

- 1. In high technology industry scientific and engineering products are produced. It requires research.
- 2. Majority of the workers are skilled in this.
- 3. Most of the work is done by computers and devices.
- 4. The locations of these industries are well-stocked with toxic buildings, offices and laboratories.
- 5. They are also called technological poles.
- 6. They are situated in the periphery area of the city because —
- Affordable and plenty of land is available in the area outside the city.
- Good transport facility is available for community.

Chapter- 7
Tertiary and Quaternary Activities

Concept Map Tertiary Activites Trade and **Transport** Communication Services **Commerce** Telecommuni-**Audio-visual** Wholesale Retail **Service Sector** cations Rail Road Air Water **City Supply** Rural Turism Banking Insurance Immovable House **Personal** Market & Profes-**Estates** sional Quaternary Activites **Rural Periodic** Urban Markets, **Public Distri-**Research and **Information bution Scheme Development Based Based Quinary Activites** Chain Postal Sulabh **Public** Stores Order Market Distri-Center **bution Specialists Decision Policy Consultants** Scheme **Formulators Makers**

Phone

Internet

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. With regard to tertiary activity, consider the following statements
 - i. Tertiary activities. involve both production and exchange.
 - ii. Under this, production is indirectly measured as wages and salary.
 - iii. Trade, transport and communication facilities in tertiary activities come under production.

Which of the statements given above is / are correct?

- (a) Only i and ii
- (b) Only iii
- (c) i and iii only
- (d) i, ii and iii
- Q.2. Which of the following is a tertiary activity?
 - (a) Clothing Manufacturing
 - (b) Communication
 - (c) Weaving
 - (d) Mining
- Q.3. Which of the following is a quaternary activity?
 - (a) Information Collection
 - (b) Money and Banking
 - (c) Print Media
 - (d) Research
- Q.4. Which area of activities includes high level decision making and policy making?
 - (a) Secondary activities
 - (b) Quaternary activities
 - (c) Quinary activities
 - (d) Tertiary activities
- Q.5. What affects the demand for transport?
 - (a) Population size
 - (b) Construction of roads
 - (c) Industrialization

- (d) None of these
- Q.6. Consider the following statements.
 - 1. Communication services include the transmission of words and message facts, not ideas.
 - 2. The road that connects the two pairs is called connector. Which of the statements given above is / are correct?
 - (a) Only 1
 - (b) Only 2
 - (c) Both 1 and 2
 - (d) Neither I nor 2
- Q.7. Radio and Television are covered under which of the following activities?
 - (a) Secondary Activity
 - (b) Tertiary Activities
 - (c) Quaternary Activities
 - (d) Quinary Activities
- Q.8. Madikeri and Coorg are related to which one of the following states in the context of Staying in Homes?
 - (a) Karnataka
 - (b) Himachal Pradesh
 - (c) Goa
 - (d) Kerala
- Q.9. Outsourcing is helpful in-
 - (a) Improving efficiency
 - (b) Increasing employment in developing countries
 - (c) Reduce price.
 - (d) All of these
- Q.10. Education, law are which type of activities:
 - (a) Primary
 - (b) Secondary
 - (c) Tertiary
 - (d) Quaternary

ANSWER

1. (a), 2. (b), 3. (d), 4. (c), 5. (a), 6. (b), 7. (b), 8. (a), 9. (d), 10. (c).

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (THREE MARKS QUESTIONS)

Q.11. What is a digital divide? How is the digital divide reflected in a country?

Ans. The distribution of opportunities based on information and communication technology development is unevenly distributed across globe. Not all countries have equal access to information and communication technology. Developed countries have moved in this direction while developing countries have lagged behind. This is called digital divide.

Digital divide, within countries: Digital divide also appears within countries, for example there is considerable difference in this technology development in different parts of India and Russia. There are plenty of information and communication technology facilities available in big cities and metros in the country while rural and, inaccessible areas are deprived of this facility.

Q.12. Why the quaternary services are caned knowledgeoriented sector?

 $\bigcirc \mathbb{R}$

Explain quaternary services with examples.

Ans. This is the specific knowledge of employees, which is used under quaternary services. In other words; it is a knowledge oriented sector.

There have been a large number of substitutions of services from primary and secondary sectors towards the quaternary sector. Growth in services is a symbol of the growth of the economy. The same type of work can be both tertiary and quaternary, as the teacher is in the tertiary category, but if a teacher engages in the work of a new teaching method and invents something, then he joins the quaternary activities.

Q.13. Briefly describe how trade and commerce give rise to services.

Ans. Trade consists of trade from local to international level.

Many collection and marketing centers are created under this process, which we can put into two categories.

- i) Rural Market Center
- ii) Urban Market Center

Businesses are also conducted in two ways —

- i) Wholesale Trade: This trade is set up by the middlemen who provide goods directly from the manufacturers. A large number of people engage with this entire process and get employment.
- ii) Retail Trade: This deals with the direct sale of goods to consumers

Q.14. Explain the three features of Rural Market Center.

OR

More specialized urban services are available in urban market centers. Explain in three points.

OR

Compare the characteristics of rural and urban marketing centers of the world in three points.

OR

What does retail trade mean? Describe any two characteristics of rural market centers and urban market centers.

Ans.

Rural Market Center	Urban Market Center
(i) This center is nearby, nurturing settlements	(i) These centers provide more specialized urban services
 (ii) These centers provide the services of local collection and distribution centers (iii) Personal and business services are not well developed at these centers. 	(ii) These centers provide local goods as well as specialized goods and services. (iii) These centers provide manufactured goods
(iv) These centers can only cater to the local rural needs	(iv)These centers also provide professional services such as teachers, lawyers, counselors and medical services.

Q.15. As result of external sourcing, a large number of employment opportunities are open in many countries. Analyze this statement with three appropriate

examples.

Ans.

- i) External sources provide external agency to work efficiently and reduce costs, a result, a large number of call centers have been operating in India, China, Eastern Europe, Israel, Philippines.
- ii) Business processing outsourcing generates new employment opportunities for qualified young men and young women.
- iii) External sources enable companies to generate additional business opportunities, which is why the trend of cyber cafes in urban areas has increased.
- iv) External source has extended knowledge process in many areas. Such as, e-learning, data analysis, e-banking sector, research and development etc.
- Q.16. Which are the two popular tourist states of the world? Describe the importance of tourism in 4 points.

Ans. Two tourist regions of the world-

- i) A tropical place around the Mediterranean coast
- ii) West Coast of India

Significance:

- i) Today it is the single largest tertiary activity in the world.
- ii) Tourism has provided employment to about 25 crore people.
- iii) Tourism provides employment to many local people to provide services such accommodation, food, transport, entertainment for the tourists.
- iv) Tourism-based infrastructure nurtures industries, retail trade and industries.
- Q.17. India has emerged as the leading country in medical tourism in the world. Explain.

Ans.

- i) World-class hospitals located in metros in India treat diseases from all over the world.
- ii) India, Switzerland is providing specialized medical facilities ranging from study of hospital radiation images to electromagnetic resonance images and electromyography tests.
- iii) Extraotropic patients also benefit from this.

Q.18. Explain the factors affecting tourism, while clarifying the role of tourism in tertiary activities.

OR

What does tourist service mean? Describe the four major factors that influence and attract tourism.

Ans. **Role:** Tourism occupies the leading position in major tertiary activities of the world. Under this, local people are appointed to provide services such as accommodation, food, transport, entertainment and shopping for tourists, this creates a large number of jobs.

Tourism Service: Tourism is a journey which serves more for the purpose of fun than for business. In tourism, people entertain themselves temporarily moving away from their residences and work places to other places foes short time.

Four factors affecting tourism-

- i) **Demand:** The demand for tourism for vacations has increased sharply since the last century. Due to high living standards and increased rest time, more people go on tours for relaxation.
- **ii) Transportation:** Due to improvement in transport facilities, there has been more development of tourism areas, for example air transport has connected the ports to all the tourist places of the world.

Factors attracting tourism

- i) Climate: Tourists from some cold countries desire to have fun on the pools in the lukewarm sun. This teen important factor in the importance of tourism in southern Europe and the Mediterranean.
- **ii)** Landscape: Some people like to spend holidays in captivating and scenic environment. For this, tourists choose mountains, lakes, scenic beaches and landscapes completely unchanged by humans.
- iii) History and Art: Places related to the history of ancient times and buildings archaeological importance are attractive places for tourists.
- iv) Culture and Economy: Tourism attracts those who like human race and local policies. "Staying at home" has emerged as a profitable business. Examples- 1. Heritage Homes in Goa, 2. Medikeri and Coorg in

Karnataka.

- Q.19. How are transport services helpful in increasing the activities?
- Ans. Movement of a person or things from one place to another is transport. All economic activities in modern times depend on transportation.
 - i) Transport as a service provides employment to a large number of people, such as drivers, conductors, loaders, unloaders, ticket collectors, etc. In this way, a large number of people am engaged in all typos of transport services.
 - ii) Transport has lcd to increase in tourisms.
 - iii) Industrial activities accelerate due to the convenience of transportation and people work in these services.
- Q.20. Services are very important for the economic development of a country. Analyze this statement explaining the five components of the service sector.

Ans. Importance of services in the economic development of a country—

- i) Commercial Services: The specific purpose of all services of advertising, legal services, public relations and consultancy is to earn profit.
- ii) Purchase, sale of property such as finance, insurance, commercial and residential land contribute to economic development.
- iii) Services connecting producers and consumers, like wholesale and retail trade, maintenance, cosmetics and repair work are provided to the consumers.
- iv) Transport and communication services: Transport by rail, road, ship and air assists in the production, distribution and consumption of goods for modern society. Communication services include the transmission of words and messages, elements and ideas. Communication services deliver messages at a fast speed.
- v) Entertainment: Television, radio, film and literature services provide entertainment to the people.
- vi) Government services at various levels of government affect economic development.
- Q.21. What is Medical Tourism? What causes its rapid growth in developing countries?

Ans. When the facility of tourism is provided along with medical treatment, it is called Medical Tourism.

Developing countries like India, Thailand, Malaysia and Singapore have emerged as leaders in the field of medical tourism. The main reason for this is that,

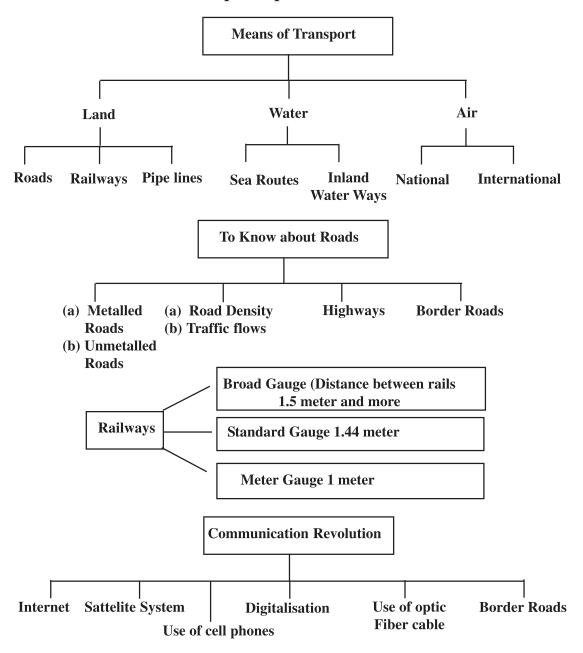
- i) Medical facilities in these countries are cheaper than other developed countries.
- ii) Treatment available is of High Quality.
- iii) Easy availability of doctors.

That is why thousands of patients come to India from developed countries like USA for medical treatment every year.

Chapter-8

Transport and Communication

Concept Map and Flow Chart



OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Which among the following waterways connects the interior part of U.S.A. with the gulf of mexico
 - (a). The Great Lakes
 - (b). Volga waterways
 - (c). Denube waterways
 - (d). Mississipi waterways
- Q.2. In modern time inland waterways are loosing their importance. What is the reason?
 - (a). Due to competition from railways.
 - (b). Lack of water in waterbodies due to diversion for irrigation.
 - (c). Poor maintenance of waterways.
 - (d). All of the above.
- Q.3. In which region, in South America the rail network is most dense.
 - (a). The pampas of Argentina and coffee growing regions of Brazil.
 - (b). Chili and Peru
 - (c). Bolivia and Columbia
 - (d). Western Coastal Area
- Q.4. From which river does a Canal joins Suez canal and supply fresh water to port said and Suez.
 - (a). Congo River
 - (b). Nile River
 - (c). Nizer River
 - (d). Zambezi River
- Q.5. The width of Highways is approximately___ meter.
 - (a). 180 Meter
 - (b). 70 Meter
 - (c). 80 Meter
 - (d). 60 Meter
- Q.6. Which sea route connects western European region to south east Asia, Australia and Newzealand.

- (a). The north Atlantic sea Route
- (b). The South Pacific Sea Route
- (c). The Cape of good hope
- (d). The Mediterranean-Indian Ocean Sea Route.
- Q.7. Which of the following match is not a oppropriate?
 - (a). Trans Siberian Railways_____ From Paris to Istambul
 - (b). Trans Canadian Railways ____ From Holifax to Vancover
 - (c). The union and pacific Railways __ From New York to Sen From cisco
 - (d). Trans Australian Railways____From Perth to Sydney.
- Q.8. The Rhine waterways flows through ----?
 - (a). France and Italy
 - (b). Germany and the Netherland
 - (c). France and Belgium
 - (d). Russia
- Q.9. In which continent is Big Inch Pipeline spread?
 - (a). South America
 - (b). North America
 - (c). Africa
 - (d). Asia
- Q.10. which of the following is not an Indian Sattelite?
 - (a). Aryabhatt
 - (b). Bhaskar.1
 - (c). Rohini
 - (d). Sputnik.

ANSWER

1-d, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-e, 6-c, 7-a, 8-b, 9-b, 10-d

SOME IMPORTANT FACTS

- i. The continent with highest density of Roads: North America
- ii. The country with highestdensety of roads: USA

- iii. The highest density of Railways: Europe
- iv. The transcontnental Railways of South America: From Buenos Aires to Valparaiso
- v. The buisest waterways of world: North Atlantic sea Route
- vi. The country which accounts for for 60 percent of the airways of the warld : U.S.A.
- vii. The pipeline in North America: Big Inch
- viii. The highway that connects north and south America_____ Pan American
- ix. The first sattelito launched in India: Aryabhatt
- x. The canal connecting Pacific ocean and Atlantic Ocean: Panama Canal

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3 MARKS)

Q.11. Life style and quality of life depends on transport and communication system. Give any three reasons to justify the statement.

Ans.

- i. Efficient transport and communication system establish links between producing centres and consuming centres.
- ii. Each region produces the items for which it is best suited. Trade or the change of such commodities relies on transportation and communication
- iii. Mobility of mankind from one place to other possible with efficient transport system, Now a days various means of transport has made it possible for a person to travel acrors the world.
- iv. People of the world came closer and may help each other at the time of disaster.
- Q.12. How is road transport better than railways

Ans.

- i. Road transport is more econmical for short distances compared to Railways.
- ii. It offers road to door to door service therefore freight transport by rood is gaining popularity.
- iii. Roads may be constructed in mountaneous and rough terrain.
- Q.13. Define highways and describe their main features.
- Ans. Highways are metalled roads connecting distance places. They connects capitals of states or important cities, mega cities and ports, airports.

Main Featuses :.

- i. They provede the convinience of unobstructed vehecular movement.
- ii. These are 80 meter wide with seperate traffic lanes, bridges, flyovers and dual carriage ways.
- Q.14. What are the main challenges faced by road transport system.

Ans.

- i. Natural disastera and bad weather conditions harm the roads and leav them not usable.
- ii. Due to growing population density pressure on roads increased but maintenance is not appropriate
- iii. Road construction and its maintenance need heavy expenditure. Many countries can not bear so much expences.
- Q.15. Briefly explain the main features of Panama canal.

(CBSE 2009,11)

or

Write the name and the main features of the canal which connects Atlantic Ocean to pacific Ocean

Ans. The canal that connects the Atlantic. Ocean in the east to the pacific Ocean in the west is called Panama canal

- i. It is about 72 km long and nearly 12 km deep.
- ii. It is a canal with 6 lock system
- iii. It shorten the distance between east coast of U.S.A. to west coast by 1300 km by sea.
- Q.16. Airtransport has revolutionised the transport system. Explain its relevance.

Ol

Air transport plays an important role in international trade. Justify the statement. Ans.

- i. Air transport is the fastest means of transportation, but it is very costly.
- ii. It is the only means to reach inaccessible areas like mountains, forests itc.
- iii. Valuable cargo and life saving drugs can be moved rapidly on a world.wide scale.
- iv. Airways also have great strategic importance.

Q.17. Which are the main factors responsible for the development of inland waterways in the world.

Ans.

- i. For inland waterways rivers should be perrenial.
- ii. The rivers should be navigable free from waterfalls, gorges and meanders.
- iii. Rivers should not be frozen in winters.
- iv. River mouth shuold be free of silt to allow connectivity of sea routes to inland waterways.
- Q.18. Write a short note on Suez canal:.

Ans. Main features of Suez canal:.

- i. This canal had been construct in 1869 in Egypt linking the Mediterranean sea and Red Sea.
- ii. It is without locks which is about 160 km broad and to 15 km deep.
- iii. It very costly as tolls are so heavy that some finds it cheaper to go by the long cape route.
- Q.19. Why does roads suffer chronic traffic congestion? what steps may be taken to cope up whth this problem?
- Ans. In some places the length of road is inappropriate in comparison of population growth. As population grows more transport facility is needed and it results in congestion on roads.

Steps suggested.

- i. Public transport should be encouraged and strengthened.
- ii. Roads should be broaden and maintained.
- iii. There should be unobstructed vehicular movement and flyovers, bridges should be made.
- Q.20. Why is Rhine waterways is the world's most heavily used. Give any three reasons.
- Ans. Rhine waterways is the world's most heavily used waterways for following reasons:.
 - i. It is navigable for a long stretch of 700 km from Rotterdem to basel in switzerland.
 - ii. It flowes through a rich coalfield of Germany. Huge tonnage moves along

- the stretch soulh of the Ruhr.
- iii. Each year nearly 20,000 Ocean going ships and 200,000 inland vessels exchango their cargoes
- Q.21. Elaborate any three features of sattelite cummunication system.
- Ans. Communication through sattelites is a new area in communication technology since the 1970s after space research works.
 - i. Communication through sattelite has rendered the unit cost and time of communication invarient in terms of distance.
 - ii. This technolgy has connected all the people and changed the world into a global village.
 - iii. Sattelite cummunication system helps in mining and weather fore casting also.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

- Q.22. Explain the advantages and disadvantages of pipeline transport
- Ans. Pipelines are uesd to transport liguid and gases such as water, petroleum and Natural gas itc.

Advantages:

- i. Pipeline can be laid in rough terrain.
- ii. Liquid and gas may be transported rapidly and at low cast.
- iii. It is ecofriendly and transported materials are not wasted and supply is contineous.

Disadvantages:.

- i. The leakages are difficult to be traced out.
- ii. Once laid, its capacity can not be increased.
- iii. Its security is a big problem.
- Q.23. Write the name of longest trans continental Railways. Describe its main features
- Aan. The longest trans contionental railways is trans-ssiberian railways in Russia.
 - i. This railways runs from st. Petersburg in the west to vladivostok on the pacific coast in the east.
 - ii. It is 9322 km long, double.trackad and electrified trans-continental railways in the world.

- iii. It connects grain producing aras of Russia to industrial areas. It helps stratagically also.
- Q.24. Write any three characteristics of water ways. Why is transport less on the cape of good hope sea route.

Ans. Main characteristies of waterways:.

- i. It does not require route constnuction.
- ii. The oceans are linked with each other and are nevigable with ships of various sizes.
- iii. Waterways are cheaper because the friction in water is for less than that of land.

Water transport is less on the 'cape of good hope sea route' because :.

- a. South America and Africa are developing countries.
- b. Distance between highly industrialised western European region to Australia and New zealand is very much.
- Q.25. Give a discription of networking of pipe line transport in the world.
- Ans. Pipelines are very convinient for transporting liquid or gas whole the words use this mode of conveyance to transport water or other such things. Some major pipelines are as following
 - i. In U.S.A. there is a dense netwark of oil pipelines from the producing areas to the consuming areas. Big inch is such a famous pipelene
 - ii. There are a netwark of pipeline in Europe, western Asia and in India also. India's HBJ pipeline is fomous pipeline
 - iii. There is a proposed pipeline from Iran to India via pakiston.

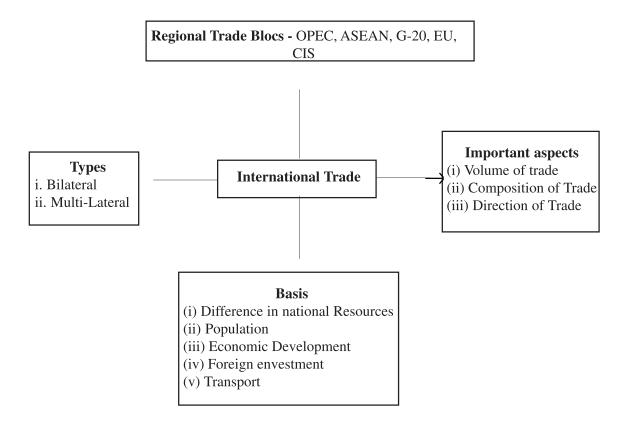
Chapter-9

International Trade

Concept Maps

HISTORY-

- (i) The trading was prevelant in ancieut Times also. Traders used to travel Rome to china via silk Route.
- (ii) A new form of trade emerged fifteenth century onward called slave trade.
- (iii) After industrial revolution row materials and manufactured products were item for trade
- (iv) WTO came in existence in 1995



OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

Q.1.	Jon Bell Mela in Jagiroad, Guahati is famous for (a). Mining of ironore (b). Barter System trade (c). Plantation agriculture (d). Natural beauty.
Q.2.	Most of the world's great ports are classified as ports. (a). Commercial. (b). Industrial. (c). Packet statiou. (d). Comprehensive.
Q.3.	What the tolal value of goods and services traded is considerde as?(a). Valume of trade.(b). Compositiou of trade(c). Balance of trade.(d). None of aboue.
Q.4.	Which among the following is not a member country of SAFTA.?(a). Bangla desh.(b). Bhutan.(c). Nepal.(d). Myanmar.
Q.5.	 There are 2 statements given (i) and (ii), Read them carefully and answer the questions that follow. (i) International trade is mutually beneficial to nations if it leads to regional specialisation and higher level of production. (ii) International trade can be proved to be detrimental to nations if it leads to dependence on other countries, uneven levels of development and

exploitation.

people.

(b). Statements i and ii are true but iii is not true.

(iii) Global trade can not impact environment, health and well being of the

- (c). All the statements are wrong.
- (d). Only statement i is true.
- Q.6. Which one among following facts about ports is false.
 - (a). Lebanon is an oil port.
 - (b). Honalulu is an example of ports of call.
 - (c). Kolkata is on outerport.
 - (d). Kochi is a naval port.
- Q.7. When is WTO established
 - (a). 1995
 - (b). 1895
 - (c). 1991
 - (d). 1948

ANSWER KEY

1.b, 2.d, 3.a, 4.d, 5.b, 6.c, 7.a

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

- Q.8. How does difference in national resource affect international trade? Explain with example.
- Ans. The world's national resources are unevenly distributed because of differences in their physical makeup.
 - a. Geological structure determines the mineral resource base and topographical difference ensure diversity of crops and animal raised.
 - b. The availability of mineral resource provides the basis for industrial development.
 - c. Climate of a place influences the type of flora and fauna. It ensures diversity in the range of various products for example wool production, rubber itc.
- Q.9. What do you understand by trade balance? what are their types?
- Ans. Balance of trade records, the volume of goods and services imported as well as exported by a country to other countries.

Negatine or unfavourable balance: When the value of imports is more than

the value of a country's exports, the country has negative balance of trade. **Positive or favourable Balance:** When the value of export is more than the value of import them the country has a position or favourable balance of trade.

Q.10. What is difference between port of call and entrepot ports?

Ans.

Port of call	Entrepot parts
These are the ports which originally developed as calling point on main sea routes.	There are collectiou centers, where goods are brought for different countries for export
Ships used to anchor here for refuelling, watering and taking food items. Example. Adeu, Honolulu	Example.Singapore Rotterdam, copenhagen

Q.11. What are main aspects of international trade? Describe. Aas.

- i. Composition of trade:- It means the nature of goods imported and exported by countries. In the beginning of the last century trade of primary product was dominant. Now manufactured goods are dominant. Fuels and mining goods are also important contributors.
- **ii. Volume of trade:-** The actual tonnage of goods traded makes up the volume. Total value of goods and services traded is considered as valume of trade.
- **iii. Direction of trade:-** It means the county with which other country trades. For example Europe country export manutacturing. Now china, India are competing with developed countries.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS(5 MARKS)

Q.12. What are the main basis of international trade? Explain (CBSE 2012 outside)

or

What are the main reasons for existene of international trade?

Ans. Interantional trade is in existence because every place or country in the world

has its specific geographical, social and cultural speciality.

- i. Difference in national Resources:
- a. Geological structure
- b. Mineral resources
- c. Climate.
- ii. Population factors
- a. Size fo population
- b. Cultural diversity
- iii. Economic development stage
- iv. Extent of foreign inuestment
- v. Facility of transport (Explain the points)
- Q.13. What is free trade? Describe its advantages and disadvantages.
- Ans. When the trade barriers like tariffs between two countries are brought down then it is called free trade or trade liberalistion.

This may be called as an act of opening up economies for trading.

Advantage-It allows goods and services from every where to compete with domestic products and services.

Disadvantages-Sometimes developed countries dumped their excers products in the markets of developing cruntries. So countries need to be cautious about dumped goods.

Q.14. What are the main concerns related to international trade?

Ans. Main challenges of international trades

- (i) Some time trade leads a country to be dependant to other country.
- (ii) Trades causes exploitation and commercial rivalry leading to wars.
- (iii) The more trade leads to more production. Therefore resources are exploited and population increases. Oil and gas producing companies does not follow the norms of sustainable development
- Q.15. Why are ports called gateways of international trade. Classify ports on various basis.

Ans.

i. Ports are called gateways of the world of international trade as cargoes and travellers pass from one part of the world to another through these

ports.

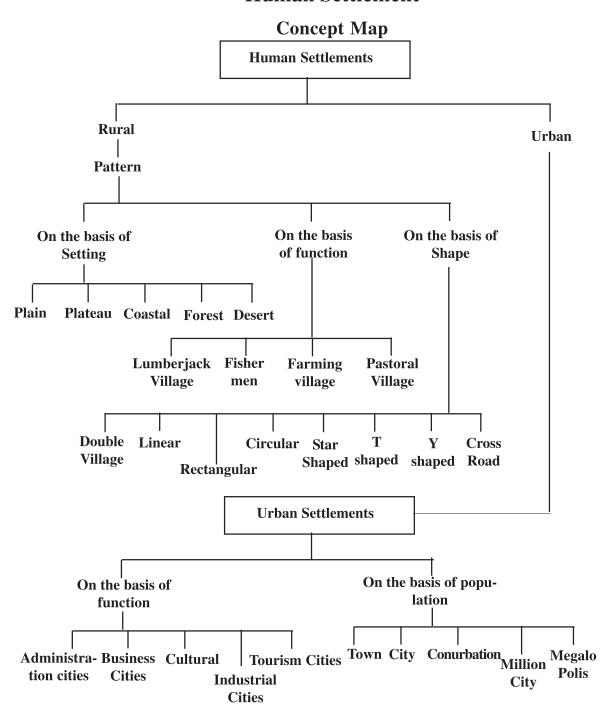
ii. The ports provides facilities of docking, loading, unloading and the storage facilities for corgo.

Types of port :.

- a. According to cargo handled
- (i) Industrial ports
- (ii) Comercial ports
- (iii) Compre hensive ports.
- b. On the basis of location:
- (i) Inland ports.located away the sea coast.
- (ii) Out ports. There are deep water ports built away from the actual ports.
- c. On the basis of specialesed functions:
- (i) Oil ports
- (ii) Ports of call
- (iii) Packet stotion
- (iv) Entrepol
- (v) Naval port(Elaborate acordingly)
- Q.16. The role of W.T.O is not same for developed and developing countries. Justify the statement with appropriate examples.
- Ans. General agreement for trade and tariffs was formed by some countries in 1948. In 1995, GATT was transformed into WTO (world trade organesatiou). This organisation forms global rules of trade between nations. It sets the rules for the global trading system and resolves disputes between its member nations. It also covers trade in services and other issues like intellectual rights.
 - It is critisized and opposed due to following reasons.
 - (i) It is argued that free trade does not make ordinary peoples lives more prosperous. It is widening the gap between rich and poor.
 - (ii) Influential nations focus on their own commercial interests instead of toking care of developing nations.
 - (iii) Many developed countries have not fully opened their markets to products from developing countries.
 - (iv) Moreover issues of environment, health, child labour and worker's rights are ignored.

Chapter-10

Human Settlement



OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Conberra eity was planned by:
 - (a). Le corbusien
 - (b). Walter burley griffin
 - (c). Lutten
 - (d). None of them
- Q.2. A large area of urban development that resulted from the merging of originally seperate towns or cities' is termed as....
 - (a). Million city
 - (b). Megapolis
 - (c). Conurbation
 - (d). City
- Q.3. Where several roads converge, which pattern of settlements develop?
 - (a). Circular pattern
 - (b). Linear pattern
 - (c). T shaped
 - (d). star like pattern
- Q.4. Which was the first urban settlement to reach a population of one million?
 - (a). London
 - (b). Newyork
 - (c). Tokiyo
 - (d). Delhi
- Q.5. Which of the following statement is wrong?
 - (a). Rural settlements are dominated by primary activities.
 - (b). Presently approximately 85 percent of the world population lives in urban sttlements.
 - (c). The lower limit of the population size for a settlement to be designated as urban is 5000 in India
 - (d). Settlements extend on both sides of ariver connected with bridge or ferry is called double village
- Q.6. Sufficiency of which type of resources com help to create adequate social

iufrastructure catering to the needs of the large population in the developing countries.

- (a). Financial
- (b). Natural
- (c). Human
- (d). Social
- Q.7. According to data of year 2012 total number of mega cities in India are.....
 - (a). 5
 - (b). 10
 - (c). 15
 - (d). 20

ANSWER KEY

1.b, 2.c, 3.d, 4., 5.b, 6.c, 7.a

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS.(3 MARKS)

- Q.8. Write the characteristics of planned settlements with example.
- Ans. Planned settlements are constructed by governments by providing shelter, water and other facilities on acquired lands.

Example.

- (i) Canal calonies in Indira gandhi canal command area
- (ii) The scheme of villagisation in Ethiopia.
- Q.9. What are the basis to classify the settlements? When can we call a settlement as rural?
- Aas. The basis to classify the settlments are occupation and population. On this basis settlements may be classified as Rural and urban.

Rural Settlements are those settlements

- (i) Where people's main econoimc activities are related to primary section such as agriculture, animal rearing etc.
- (ii) In rural settlements population and its density is less than thore of urban settlements.
- Q.10. Which city may be catagorised as healthy city?

- Ans. According to WHO, among other things a healthy city must have:.
 - (i) A clean and safe environment.
 - (ii) Meets the Basic Needs of all its inhabitants
 - (iii) Involver the community in local Government
 - (iv) Provides easily accessible Health service.
- Q.10. See the diagrams below and answer the questions given

- I. Write the name of pattern of settlements A and B.
- II. Where does 'A' type of settlement found?
- III. Write any two main features of 'B' type of settlement.
- Ans. (I) A- Linear Pattern
 - B- Double village
 - (II) A type of settlement is found along with a river or canal.
- Q.11. The developing countries have the rural population in majority. Rural population of these countries are facing many problems. Explain.
- Ans. India, Pakistan, Bangla Desh and such other countries have more more than 50% of their population rural. The rural population of these countries are facing following problems.

Problem of water supply:

(i) Supply of water to rural settlements in developing countries is not adequate. People have to walk long distances to fetch drinking water

- particularly in arid and mountaneous areas. Water born deseases tend to be a common problem in these villages.
- (ii) Lack of sewage system:. The general absence of toilet and gorbage disposal facility causes health related problems
- (iii) The houses made up of mud, wood and thatch remain suspectible to damage during heavy rains and floods.
- (iv) Lack of infrastructure like roads, hospitals and schools is a serious problem that push them to cities.
- (v) Lack of modern communication network create a unique problem Many settlements remain cut off during rainy season and serious difficulty arise to provide emergency services.
- Q.12. What are the main features of compact or nucleated settlements of the world.

Ans. Main features :-

- i. In these type of settlements large number of houses are built very close to each other
- ii. This type of settlements develop along river valleys and in fertile plains. Example plain of river Ganges
- iii. Communities are closely knit and share common occupations.
- Q.13. What are the main problems of urban settlements in developing countries?
- Ans. **Economic Problemas-** People migrat from villages to cities for employment. The enormous migrant population generates a pool of unskilled and semiskilled labour force, which is already saturated in urban areas.

Socio-cultural Problems- Proper education and health facilities are not available to poors. Lack of employment and education tends to aggravate the crime rate.

Environmental Problems- Pollution of every type is becoming a big problem in cities of rural settlements.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- Q.14. On the basis of shape classify the rural settlements and describe any five:
- Ans. On the basis of shapes and forms, rural settlement may be classified in many types.
 - i. Linear pattern: In such settlements houses are located along a road, railway line, river or canal

- ii. Rectangular pattern: These are found in plain areas or wide inter montane valleys the roads are reactangular and cut each other at right angles.
- iii. Circular Pattern. This type of village is developed around lakes, tanks and some times the village is planned around an open, plan area. That area is used for keeping the animals.
- iv. Star like pattern: Some times several roads converge at a place and houses built along the road.
- v. T-shaped and Y-shaped: When settlements develop at tri.Junctious of the roads, T shaped settlement develop. Y-shaped settlement emerge when two roads converge on the third one.
- Q.15. What are the main physical factors affecting the location of rural settlements in the world?

(CBSE 2015)

- Ans. Some main factors affecting the location of rural settlement are as following ._
 - i. **Water Supply:** Rural settlements are deminoled by primary activities such as agricultura, animal rearing or fishing, so they tend to settle near to ony water body. Most walewbased wet point' settlements have many advantages such as waten for drinking, cooking, washing itc. Rivers and lakes are also used for trausport.
 - ii. Land. Fertile lands suitable for agricultuse attrcts people to settle. This was the reason for river valleys to be densely populated.
 - iii. Building Materials. Easy availability of building materials like wood, stone is an advantage for people to settle to that place.
 - iv. Defence. People always is safe at the line of war or any other situation of hastality. In India many forts are located on higher grounds or hills.
 - v. Uplauds- The area which is not prone to flooding was often chosen by people for their settlement.
- Q.16. What are the main priorities outlined by UNDP as part of its 'Urban Strategy'?
- Ans. i. To increase shelter of urban people.
 - ii. To provide basic urban services such as education, primary health care, claen water and sanitation.
 - iii. Improving women's access to 'Basic Services and government facilities'
 - iv. Upgrading 'energy' use alternitive transport systems

- v. Resucing Airpollution and other type of pollution
- Q.17. What are the problems faced by a country due to increasing urbanisation.?

The growth in urbanisation is symbol of development. But it becomes the reason of many other problems also. Explain.

- Ans. Rapid urban growth in all over world is a recent phenomenon. Although it is a sign of development yet many problems arise due to this urban growth.
 - (i) Lack of basic amenities like shortage of housing congestion.
 - (ii) Econmic problems. Unemployment, low standard of living.
 - (iii) Socio.cultural problems.like lonelines, inadequate facilities of health and entertainment aggravation of crime rate, male selective migration etc.
 - (iv) Environment degradation. Air pollution due to exessive use of fossil fuel, water pollution due to industries
 - (v) Illegal settlements and slums
 - (vi) Problem of waste mananement (Describe each point)

QUESTION FOR PRACTICE.

- i. "Shortage of housing and rapid growth of slums are main problems of urban settlements" Discuss this state ment with proper example.
- ii. Mention the main characteristics of rural and urban settlements.
- iii. What are the main criteria to define urban areas? How does it differ from one country to another.?

SUPPORT MATERIAL

PART: II

INDIA: PEOPLE AND ECONOMY

Part II

India: People And Economy

Content

- 1. Population: Distribution, Density Growth and Composition
- 2. Migration: Types, Causes and Consequences
- 3. Human Development
- 4. Human Settlement
- 5. Land Resource and Agriculture
- 6. Water Resources
- 7. Mineral And Energy Resources
- 8. Manufacturing Industries
- 9. Planning And Sustainable Development in Indian Context
- 10. Transport And Communication
- 11. International Trade
- 12. Geographical Perspective On Selected Issues And Problems

Lesson - 1

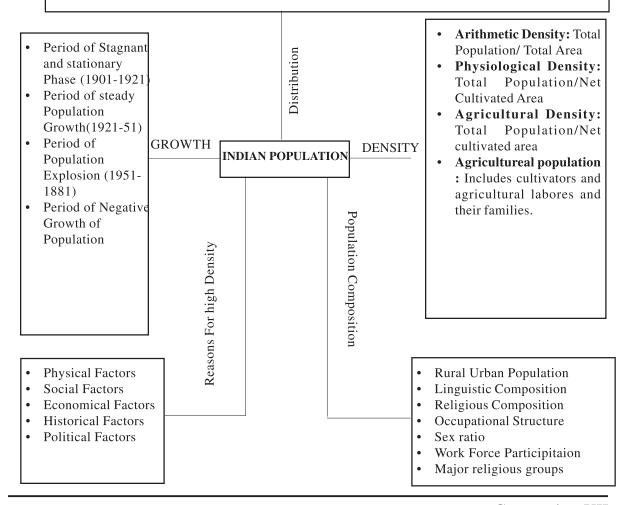
POPULATION : DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY, GROWTH AND POPULATION COMPOSTION

UNEVEN DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION

AREAS OF HIGH POPULATION (50mill to 100 million): Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan, Gujrat, Madhya Pradesh, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh

Areas of Medium Population (1 to 50 million): Jammu and Kashmir, Uttarakhand, Chhatishgarh, Odisha, Kerala

Areas of Low Population (Less than 10 million): Himachal Pradesh, Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Meghalaya, Manipur, Mizoram, Tripura, Goa, Sikkim.



IMPORTANT FACT

BASED ON 2011 CENSUS

- 1. India Total Population: 1210193422
- 2. India Population Density: 382 person/ per sq km
- 3. Sex Ratio India: 940 females / per 1000 males
- 4. Literacy rate India: 74.4%
- 5. Most populous State: Uttar Pradesh
- 6. Least Populated State: Sikkim
- 7. State with highest Density of Population: Bihar (1106 person/sq km)
- 8. State with lowest Density of Population: 17 person/sq km
- 9. Annual Growth rate of Population: 1.64%
- 10. Proportion of World Population: 17.5%
- 11. State with the most favorable sex ratio: Kerala (1084 females/ 1000 males)
- 12. State with most unfavorable sex ratio: Haryana (877 females / 1000 males)
- 13. State with highest percentage of rural population in 2011: Himachal Pradesh
- 14. State with highest percentage of Urban Population: Goa
- 15. UT with highest percentage of rural population: Andaman & Nicobar Islands
- 16. UT with highest percentage of urban population: Delhi

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Rajasthan which was earlier a sparsely populated area, now has higher concentration of population because of:
 - a) Expansion of transport network
 - b) Availability of energy resources
 - c) Development of historical places
 - d) Development of Agriculture
- Q.2. The recognition of Physiological Density and Agricultural Density is important because:
 - a) Arithmetic Density is a crude measure
 - b) This gives information about net sown area
 - c) India is a vast country
 - d) Both a and c
- Q.3. Natural factors along with birth rate and death rate determine the ______of population.
 - a) Doubling time of population
 - b) Induced population growth
 - c) Natural Increase
 - d) Annual growth rate
- Q.4. Which of the following pair is not matched correctly

	Year		Trend			
	A.	1921-1951	Stable growth			
	В.	1901-1921	Period of high population growth			
	C.	1981 till present	period of negative growth			
	D.	1951-1981	Population Explosion			
Q.5.	i)	Development of cap	abilities of the young population is important			

	ii)	The National Policy is one example which has been designed to look into the overall development of our youth.
	a)	Only statement i) is correct
	b)	Only statement i) is correct
	c)	Both i) and ii) are correct
	d)	Both statements are incorrect
Q.6.	Acc	ording to 2011 censuspercentage of Indian population resides in
	rura	l areas.
	a)	47.7
	b)	68.8
	c)	74.7
	d)	86.8
Q.7.	A pe	erson who works at least 183 days in a year is:
	a)	Marginal worker
	b)	Main worker
	c)	Skilled worker
	d)	Unskilled worker
Q.8.	Whi	ch state has the highest percentage of rural population?
	a)	Uttar Pradesh
	b)	Himachal Pradesh
	c)	Bihar
	d)	Sikkim
Q.9.	India	a haslanguages anddialects.
	a)	22 languages and 154 dialects
	b)	154 languages and 22 dialects
	c)	179 languages and 544 dialects
	d)	544 languages and 179 dialects
Q.10.	Birtl	h rate — Death rate + (Immigration -emigration) indicates the
	a)	Annual growth of population
	b)	Actual growth of population
Geo	orant	ny- XII 98

for the economic, social development of the country

- c) Natural increase of population
- d) Working Population

ANSWER KEY

1(d), 2(d), 3(c), 4(b), 5(c), 6(b), 7(b), 8(a), 9(c), 10(b)

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3 MARKS QUESTION)

- Q.11. The distribution of population is very uneven in India. What does this fact reflect about India?
- Ans. The distribution of population is very uneven in India. States like; Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Bihar, West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Karnataka and Gujarat have 76% of India's Population. This uneven distribution of population can be attributed to:
 - 1. Variation in physical factors: The distribution of factors for development of agriculture, and economic activities is very uneven. States like Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and West Bengal with fertile plains and suitable climate can nourish large population.
 - 2. Uneven Industrial development: in Maharashtra Gujarat and Karnataka industrial development along with agriculture is responsible for concentration of population.
 - 3. Our country has a lot of diversity in terms of social, cultural and historical perspectives.
- Q.12. Into how many groups the working population can be divided on the basis of economic status.
- Ans. The working population of India can be divided into three groups on the basis of economic structure.
 - 1. Main Worker A person who works for at least 183 days(6 months) in a year is known as main worker
 - 2. Marginal Worker: A person who works less than 183 days(6 months) in a year is known as a marginal worker.

- 3. Non Worker: A person who is unemployed is termed as a non worker.
- Q.13. During 1901-1921 the growth rate of population in India was stationary or negative. Explain the reasons for this trend.

Ans. During this period both birth rate and death rate were high.

- 1. Lack of health facilities
- 2. Lower level of literacy among people
- 3. Lack of provision for proper distribution of food and basic necessities.
- Q.14. Explain the objectives of the national youth policy adopted by the Government of India in 2014.

Ans. The National Youth Policy (NYP-2014) launched in February 2014 proposes a holistic 'vision' for the youth of India, which is:

- 1. To empower the youth of the country to achieve their full potential,
- 2. Through them enable India to find its rightful place in the community of nations".
- 3. All round development of the youths in the country.
- 4. The NYP-2014 has defined 'youth' as persons in the age group of 15-29 years.
- Q.15. What are the many challenges for the society for adolescents?

Ans. Challenges for the society as far as these adolescents are concerned.

- 1. Illiteracy: Many adolescents especially girls are illiterate because of which they are not able to contribute in the development of their family.
- 2. Drug Abuse: Many adolescents are not able to complete their education and get addicted to drugs hence becoming a burden to the society.
- 3. Lower age of Marriage: lower age of marriage is responsible for high maternal mortality rate which affects the sex ratio.
- 4. Lack of proper guidance: there is a lack of facilities for proper counselling and guidance of the youths.
- 5. Other challenges: Diseases like HIV/AIDS and high maternal mortality are also challenges faced by youths.
- Q.16. How economic factors affect the population. Explain with examples.

Ans.

- 1. Economic factors like economic opportunities and availability of energy resources also affect the distribution of population.
- 2. The areas where people do not get regular sources of income will be sparsely populated.
- 3. Developed transportation, energy resources, developed infrastructure lead to many economic opportunities and attract people. This is the reason that Mumbai, Delhi and Bengaluru are highly populated.
- Q.17. Write any three reasons for steady population growth form 1921-1951.

Ans. Following are the reasons for the steady population growth from (1921-1951).

- 1. Due improvement in health services death rate declined.
- 2. More awareness amongst people led to Steady rate of population growth.
- 3. Improvement in education level lead to a fall in birth rate.
- 4. Due to improvement in transportation the distribution system improved.
- Q.18. Explain the features of India's Population pyramid.

Ans.

- 1. The pyramid is narrow in the old age group.
- 2. 22% of the population is able to attain the age of 50 years
- 3. 12 percent of population is aged 60
- 4. 10 % of population is found in the age group of 40-49.
- Q.19. Write any four reasons for low sex ratio in India.

Ans.

- 1. More preference for male child
- 2. Female foeticide
- 3. Due to malnutrition many babies die
- 4. Lower socio economic status of women in society.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS)

- Q.20. Which are the four linguistic groups in India? Write the features of any two groups.
- Ans. 1. Austric
 - 2. Dravidian

- 3. Sino-Tibetan
- 4. Indo European.
- (i) **Indo European 73%**: Around of the total population speaks Indo European language.

Maximum concentration of this language is in the northern states.

- (ii) **Dravidian language Family:** 20% of population speaks Dravidian languages. Main areas of this language are concentrated in peninsular plateau. The languages included in this family are' Telugu, Tamil, Malayalam and Kannada.
- Q.21. Discuss the distribution of population density in India.

Ans.

1. The density of population in India (2011) is 382 persons per sq km and ranks third among the most densely populated countries of Asia.

India has a highly uneven pattern of population distribution. U.P., Maharashtra, Bihar, West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh along with Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Karnataka and Gujarat, together account for about 76 per cent of the total population of the country. On the other hand, share of population is very small in the states like Jammu & Kashmir (0.98%), Arunachal Pradesh (0.11%) and Uttaranchal (0.83%) inspite of these states having fairly large geographical area.

- Q.22. What is population growth rate? Explain the four stages of population growth in India.
- Ans. Phase-I: The period from (1901-1921) is referred to as a period of stagnant or stationary phase of growth of India's population, In this period growth rate was very low, even recording a negative growth rate during 1911-1921. Both the birth rate and death rate were high keeping the rate of increase low.

Phase-II: The decades (1921-1951) is referred to as the period of steady population growth. An overall improvement in health and sanitation throughout the country brought down the mortality rate. At the same time the better transport and communication system improved distribution system. The crude birth rate remained high in this period leading to higher growth rate than the previous phase.

Phase-III: The decades (1951-1981) is referred to as the period of population explosion in India, which was caused by a rapid fall in the mortality rate but a high fertility rate of population in the country. The average annual growth rate was, as high as 2.2 percent. Increased international migration bringing in Tibetans, Bangladeshis, Nepalies and even people from Pakistan contributed to the high growth rate in this period.

Phase IV: 1981 to till present time, the growth rate of country's population though remained high, has started slowing down gradually. A downward trend of crude birth rate is held responsible for such a population growth. This was, in turn, affected by an Increase in the mean age at marriage, improved quality of life particularly education of females in the country. Though the growth rate of population is still high in India, there is wide regional variation from one region to the other.

- Q.23. What is population density? Explain the physical factors affecting population distribution.
- Ans. The number of people living in each unit of area (such as a square mile) is known as population density.

Physical factors affecting population distribution are:

- 1. Topography: Generally flat lands or gently sloping lands are densely populated. On the other hand in mountainous and hilly areas density of population is low that is why we see concentration of very less population in northern and Northeastern mountains.
- 2. Climate along with terrain and availability of water largely determines the pattern of the population distribution. Example; The North Indian Plains, deltas and Coastal Plains have higher proportion of population than the interior districts of southern and central Indian States, Himalayas, some of the north eastern and the western states.
- 3. Soil: soil affects agriculture. In areas of fertile soil agricultural is well developed and that leads to higher population in these areas.
- 4. Availability of water: Availability of water attracts population.
- Q.24. In India the number of male workers in different sectors are more as compared to females. Discuss the reasons for less work participation rate of females in

India.

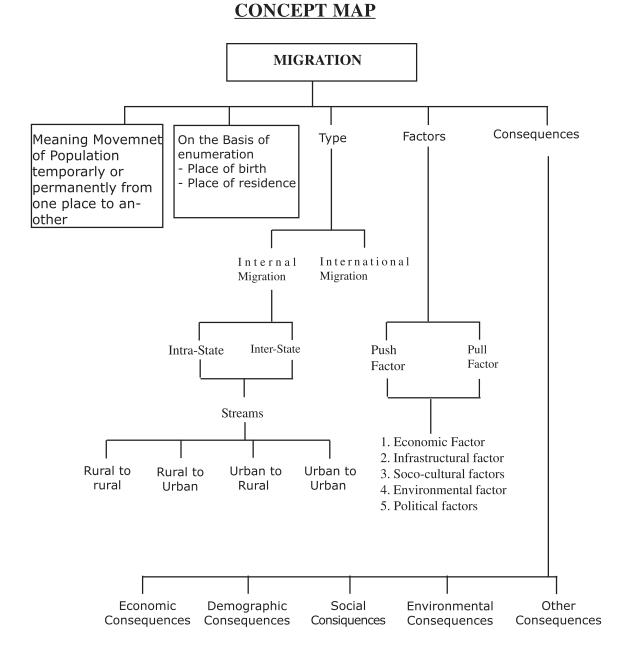
Ans. The following reasons are responsible for low work participation rate arnongst women.

- 1. Joint family system
- 2. Low level of literacy among women
- 3. Limited opportunities of employment.
- 4. More family responsibilities for women.
- 5. Lack of social security for women.

WHAT HAVE WE LEARNT?

- 1. Population Distribution: definition
- 2. Population Density: Definition and types
- 3. Factors responsible for uneven distribution of population
- 4. Spatial variation in distribution of density of population in India.
- 5. Indian linguistic groups and their characteristics.
- 6. Working population of India.
- 7. Population growth: Spatial variation
- 8. Rural- Urban composition of Indian population,
- 9. Work participation rate

LESSON-2 MIGRATION: TYPES, CAUSES AND CONSEQUENCES



MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

$\overline{}$	1	What	is	the	main	reason	of	mig	ration	of	males	in	India	19
\checkmark	, T .	vv mu	10	uic	mann	TCuson	O1	11115	STALION	OI	marco	TII	muic	ι.

- a) Education
- b) Employment
- c) Trade
- d) Marriage

Q.2. In the 1881 census what was the basis for collection of migration data?

- a) Rural to urban migration
- b) Place of birth
- c) Duration of residence
- d) Both a) and c)

Q.3. Which state in India recorded maximum in migration in 2011?

- a) Gujarat
- b) Punjab
- c) Maharashtra
- d) Haryana

Q.4. The factors which attract people towards an area are known as:

- a) Pull Factors
- b) Push Factors
- c) Physical Factors
- d) Spatial factors

Q.5. Lack of basic infrastructure and natural disasters are factous.

- a) Pull
- b) Push
- c) Rural
- d) Physical

Q.6. From which neighboring country did India receive the maximum number of migrants?

- a) Nepal
- b) So Lanka
- c) Bangladesh

- d) Myanmar
- Q.7. From which Indian state maximum out migration is recorded?
 - a) Haryana
 - b) Bihar
 - c) Madhya Pradesh
 - d) Uttar Pradesh
- Q.8. The place from where people migrate to the place of destination is known as_____.
 - a) Place of residence
 - b) Place of origin
 - c) Central Place
 - d) Birth place

ANSWER KEY

1-b), 2 -b), 3-c), 4a), 5-b), 6-c), 7-d), 8-b)

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

- Q.9. What are the push and pull factors of migration?
- Ans. **Push Factors:** These cause people to leave their place of residence or origin. In India people migrate from rural to urban areas mainly due to poverty, high population pressure on the land, lack of basic infrastructural facilities like health care, education, etc. Apart from these factors, natural disasters such as, flood, drought, cyclonic storms, earthquake, tsunami, wars and local conflicts also give extra push to migrate.

Pull Factors: Pull factors, which attract the people from different places. The most important pull factor for majority of the rural migrants to urban areas is the better opportunities, availability of regular work and relatively higher wages. Better opportunities for education, better health facilities and sources of entertainment, etc., are also quite important pull factors.

Push-factors Countries of origin	Migrants	Pull-factors Countries of destl		
Population gnowth,	Demographic	Stable Population,		

Young age structure Inadequate educational institutions, medicare and medicure, social security.	factors and Social Infrastructure	Population decline, ageing. Welfare state benifits, educational institutions, medicare and medicure, social security.
Unemployment, low wages Poverty, low consumption and living standard	Economic factors	Labour demand, high wages Welfare, high consumption and living standard
Dictatorship, shadow democracy, bad governance, Political upheaval Conflict, (Civil) war, terrorism, human rights voilation, oppression of minorities	Political Factors	Democracy, rule of law, pluralism, political stability Peace, security, protection of human and civil rights, protection of minorities.
Ecologic disaster, desertification, lack of natural resources, water shortage, soil erosion, lack of environmental policy	Ecological	Better environment, environmental policy, protection of natural resources and environmental protection
Decisions of the family or the clan Information flow, media,	Migrant flows and migrant stocks	Diaspora ethnic community Information flowa, media tranferred picture of

Q.10. What do you understand by brain drain? Explain the negative impacts of brain drain for a country like India.

Ans.

1. Brain drain is the one of the first event associated with the process of

- globalization. It has some negative implications at the local level. The migration of skilled workforce is known as brain drain.
- 2. With the migration of skilled workforce developing countries are devoid of skilled workers.
- 3. It also leads to fiscal burden or loss of revenue for the source country.
- Q.11. What are the effects of rural to urban migration on the age and sex composition of source region and destination region?

Ans.

- 1. The place from where people migrate is known as source region and the place where people migrate are known as destination region.
- 2. Many youths from rural areas migrate to urban areas in search of employment opportunities. This leads to less young population in rural areas and more young population in urban areas.
- 3. In rural areas the population of females, children and old people increases.
- 4. Out migration from Uttarakhand, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and eastern Maharashtra has led to unstable age sex composition.
- Q.12. Discuss the causes of migration.

OR

People, generally are emotionally attached to their place of birth. But millions of people leave their places of birth and residence. There could be variety of reasons. Explain and five reasons.

OR

Discuss the push factors of migration.

Ans.

- 1. Economic Factors: most of the people in rural areas depend on agriculture but due to limited agricultural land many people are not able to find work. Many people migrate to urban areas attracted by economic opportunities and urban amenities and settle there. Problems like unemployment, hunger, poverty etc at the source region act as push factor.
- 2. Infrastructure factors: In rural areas lack of education especially higher education, health facilities, transport and recreation push people to migrate to urban areas.
- 3. Socio-Cultural factors: females have to migrate after marriage.

- 4. Political Factors: war, Political disturbances and inter-ethnic conflicts drive people away from their home.
- 5. Natural/ Environmental: Occurrence of natural disasters like flood, earthquake, tsunami, Cyclone, drought etc force people to migrate to safer places.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

Q.13. Discuss the consequences of migration?

OR

Explain the economic, demographic, social and environmental consequences of migration.

Ans. Consequences of Migration

Migration is a consequence of the uneven — distribution of opportunities over space. People tends to move from place of low opportunity and low safety to the place of higher opportunity and; better safety. Results can be observed in i economic, social, cultural, political and, demographic terms.

Economic Consequences

These consequences are positive as well as negative: Positive Remittances are important for economy of a country. As migrants sent remittances to their family members for food, repayment of loans/debts, treatment, marriages, children's education, agricultural inputs, construction of houses, etc.

Green Revolution in the rural areas of Punjab, Haryana, Western Uttar Pradesh was a success because of the migrants from rural areas of 'Eastern Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and Odisha.

Negative Over crowding due to unregulated migration. Development of unhygienic slums in industrially developed states like Maharashtra, Gujarat, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Delhi.

Demographic consequences

These consequences can be both positive or negative:

Positive Redistributing of population within a country. The process of urbanisation is dependent on rural-urban migration.

Negative Imbalance in demographic structure. Age and skill selective out migration created an imbalance in demographic structure of rural areas. Age

and sex-composition is seriously affected in states of Uttarakhand, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Eastern Maharashtra due to migration. The same situation happens in the recipient states.

Social consequences

These consequences are both positive as well as negative:

Positive Migrants work as an agent of social change. They diffuse new ideas of science and technology, family planning, girls education, etc from one place to another place. People also bring different cultures with them which help break the narrow considerations and broaden up the mental horizon of the people.

Negative Anonoymity increases and creates social vacuum and feeling of dejectoin. This feeling ulitmately results in anti-social activities such as drug abuse, theft, etc.

Environmental consequences

Negative Large scale rural-Urban migration leads to overcrowding in the cities and puts tremendous pressure on the infrastructure. It also results in unplanned and haphazard growth of cities in which slums and shanty colonies are very common. Overcrowding is also related to over-exploitation of natural cities are facing serious problems of water shortage, air and water pollution, problem of sewage disposal and management of solid wastes.

Q.14. Discuss the three waves of Indian Diaspora. Ans.

- 1. Indian diaspora during colonial period (British period) millions of the indentured labourers were sent to Mauritius, Caribbean islands (Trinidad, Tobago and Guyana), Fiji and South Africa.
- 2. The second wave of migrants ventured out into the neighbouring countries in recent times as professionals, artisans, traders and factory workers, in search of economic opportunities to Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore, Indonesia, Brunei and African countries, etc. and the trend still continues. There was a steady outflow of India's semi-skilled and skilled labour in

- the wake of the oil boom in West Asia in the 1970s.
- 3. Third wave, of migrant was comprised of professionals like doctors, engineers (1960 onwards), software engineers, management consultant, financial experts, media persons (1980s onwards), and others migrated to countries such as USA, Canada, UK, Australia, New Zealand and gerrnany, etc. These professionals enjoy the distinction of being one of highly educated, the highest earning and prospering groups. After liberalisation, in the 90s education and knowledge—based Indian emigration has made Indian Diaspora one of the most powerful diasporas in the world. In all these countries, Indian diaspora has been playing an important role in the development of the respective countries.

Q.15. Explain the spatial distribution of migration with any five points. Ans.

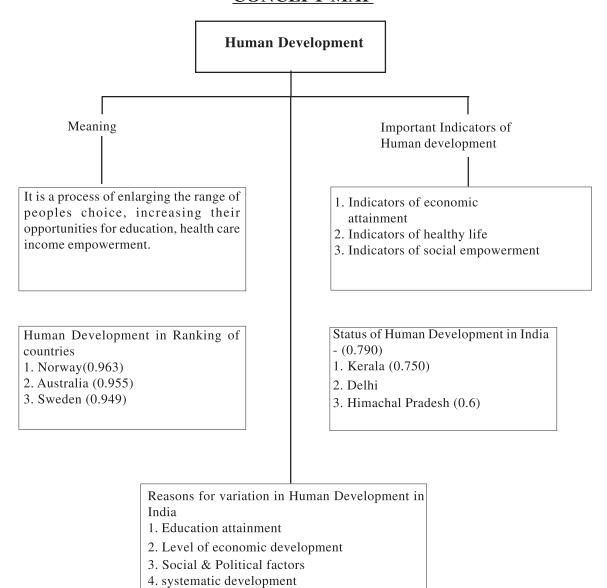
- 1. Some states like Maharashtra, Delhi, Gujarat and Haryana attract migrants from other states.
- 2. States like Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan, has large out migration.
- 3. In states like Delhi, Mumbai and Kolkata metropolitan regions attracted international migrants.
- 4. In the recent years migrants from neighbouring countries have settled in bordering areas of India. etc. Maharashtra occupied first place in migrants, followed by Delhi, Gujarat and Haryana. On the other hand, Uttar Pradesh was the state, which had the largest number of net out-migrants from the state.
- Q.16. With the changing time the streams and causes of migration have changed. Explain the statement with appropriate examples.
- Ans. Changes in the causes and nature of migration with changing times can be explained by the following examples.
 - 1. With the changing time the reasons of migration has also seen a transition from, religious factors, wars, natural disasters to employment, education, investment and better standard of living.
 - 2. Since independence migration has covered people from all spheres of life like; labourers, traders, educated youth and women. At present the impact of liberalisation and globalisation on the nature of migration is

- clearly visible. Migrants are playing an important role in the development of the country.
- 3. During colonial period, millions of labourers were sent to Caribbean countries to work in plantations under the Girmit Act. This led a complete change in the life of these labourers.

LESSON - 3

HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

CONCEPT MAP



MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

Q.1.	opment report, what were the minimum?							
	a)	conditions of human development? a) Environmental pollution and ecological instability						
	b)	_	and increasing empowerment of people					
	c)	Treating the regional imbalar						
	d)	Increase in per capita Income						
Q.2.	What was the rank of India based on Human Development index of 2017?							
	a)	136						
	b)	129						
	c)	127						
	d)	130						
Q.3.	Wh	ich of the below is not matched	d correctly?					
		I	II					
	a)	Gross Domestic Product	Indicator of economic achievement					
	b)	Infant mortality rate	Indicator of healthy life					
	c)	Poverty Index	Indicator of healthy life					
	d)	Illiteracy	Indicator of social empowerment					
Q.4.		has lowest sex i	ratio in the 0-6 age group.					
	a)	Maharashtra, Haryana						
	b)	Punjab, Haryana						
	c)	Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh						
	d)	Uttar Pradesh, Haryana						
Q.5.	i)	The GDP of any country does	s not reflect the quality of life of a country.					
	ii)	From GDP it is difficult to account	cess the changes that have occurred related					
		to increase in choices of peop	ole.					
	a)	Only i) is correct						
	b)	Only ii) is correct						
	c)	-	nd ii) explains i)					
	d)	Both statements are wrong	•					
Q.6.	States with higher literacy rate than the national average							
-	are							

- a) Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Himachal Pradesh, Kerala
- b) Punjab, Mizoram, Kerala, Haryana
- c) Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Assam, West Bengal
- d) Bihar, Uttar Pradesh, Jammu Kashmir, Assam
- Q.7. Which state has the lowest female literacy?
 - a) Jammu Kashmir
 - b) Chhattisgarh
 - c) Bihar
 - d) Maharashtra

ANSWER KEY:

1-b), 2-d), 3-c), 4-b), 5-c), 6-b), 7-c).

LEVEL OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT	STATE	HDI (HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX)
High Human Development Index	Kerala	0.790
Medium Human Development Index	Himachal Pradesh Goa	0.652 0.617
Low Human Development Index	Bihar Odisha Chhattisgarh	0.367 0.362 0.352

SHORT ANS. QUESTIONS (3 MARKS)

- Q.8. Social empowerment is an important indicator of human development. Explain the statement with examples.
- Ans. Social empowerment is a process to develop the feelings of autonomy and self confidence in people, which will lead to positive development in social organisations.

When the society will be free of hunger, poverty and illiteracy than only it

Will move towards human development. Human development is freedom.

Q.9. Explain with three reasons why human development is low in most of the Northern States?

Ans.

- 1. **Poverty**: Except for Haryana and Punjab other northern states have not been able to attain human development due to poverty. The average par capita income in these states is even less than 2000 rupees.
- 2. **Low Level of health facilities**: Literacy rates are very low in these states. Literacy rates are related to human development. Low level of literacy rates are related to human development. Low level of literacy indicates low level of human development.
- 3. **Low level of health facilities:** The states which lack in health facilities or they are out of the reach of the poor. This situation leads to a negative impact on human development.
- Q.10. How economic development affects human development? Ans.
 - 1. Economic development ensures people's access to resources. Economic development is measured in terms of per capita income. With more income people can have access to natural as well as human made resources, like health and education etc.
 - 2. States like Maharastra, Punjab, Gujrat and Delhi have high per capita income whereas states like; Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Odisha have low per capita income. There is a difference in the purchasing power of people in these state. For example, in Punjab the per capita income is 690 rupees whereas in Uttar Pradesh it is only 510 ruptoet person.
 - 3. An increase in income definitely leads to an expansion in capabilities and access to resources. For example, Kerala has higher human development and literacy rate than many developed countries still the state does not have a well-developed transport system.
- Q.12. One of the perspectives Of human development is the low level of human

conditions. These are responsible for the continuous decrease in the capabilities of people. Explain the statement with three arguments.

Ans.

- 1. Decrease in social capabilities is a result of displacement and weakening of social bonds.
- 2. Environmental pollution has reduced the environmental capabilities of people.
- 3. Increasing illnesses and accidents have led to a decrease in the personal capacities of people.
- Q.13. Explain the negative consequences of modern development.

Ans.

- i) Modern development has led to social inequality. One section of society has access to all the amenities of life whereas the other section is not able to avail even the basic facilities.
- ii) Modern development has also led to regional imbalances. Some states have come far in terms of human development like; Kerala, Punjab, and Tamil Nadu etc whereas states like Bihar, Odisha, Jharkhand and Chhattisgarh are left behind.
- iii) Modern development has led to environmental degradation which is a serious concern.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS)

Q.14. Development is a mix bag of opportunities as well as neglect and deprivation". Explain the statement with examples.

Ans.

- 1. Here are a few areas like the metropolitan centers and other developed enclaves that have all the modern facilities available to a small section of its population. At the other extreme of it, there are large rural areas and the slums in the urban areas that do not have basic amenities like potable water, education and health infrastructure available to majority of this population.
- 2. Majority of the scheduled castes, scheduled tribes, landless agricultural labourers, poor farmers and slums dwellers, etc. are the most marginalized lot. Whereas a few rich are living a life of luxury.

- 3. A large segment of female population is the worst sufferers among all It is also equally true that the relative as well as absolute conditions of the majority of these marginalized sections have worsened with the development happening over the years.
- Q.15. How the planning commission analyses human development.
- Ans. Using the indicators selected by the UNDP, the Planning Commission of India also prepared the Human Development Report for India. It used states and the Union Territories as the units of analysis Planning commission is using following indicators for human development.
 - 1. Indicators of Economic Attainments: include GDP, per capita income, employment opportunities, purchasing power etc.
 - 2. Indicators of healthy life: A life free of diseases and higher life expectancy are indicators of healthy life. For measuring this we take into account child mortality, maternal mortality, and facilities available to expecting mothers and health facilities for the old age population and the population in general.
 - 3. Social Empowerment: Freedom from; hunger, poverty, slavery, bonded labor, and illiteracy.
- Q.16. "Development in general and human development in particular is a complex concept used in social sciences". Justify the statement with appropriate arguments.
- Ans. Development in general and human development in particular is a complex concept used in social sciences. It is complex because for ages it was thought that development is a substantive concept and once it is achieved it will address all the socio-cultural and environmental ills of the society.
 - Though, development has brought in significant improvement in the quality of life in more than one way but increasing regional disparities, social inequalities, discriminations, deprivations, displacement of people, abuse of human rights and undermining human values and environmental degradation have also increased.

People's participation and their security were the major issues in the Human Development Report of 1993. It also emphasised on progressive

democratisation and increasing empowerment of people as minimum conditions for human development.

• There have been marginal expansion in the resources of the world in the last three hundred years but there has been phenomenal growth in the human population. Development has only contributed in increasing the multiple uses of the limited resources of the world while there has been enormous increase in the demand for these resources.

Q.17. Why is human development essential? Explain.

Ans.

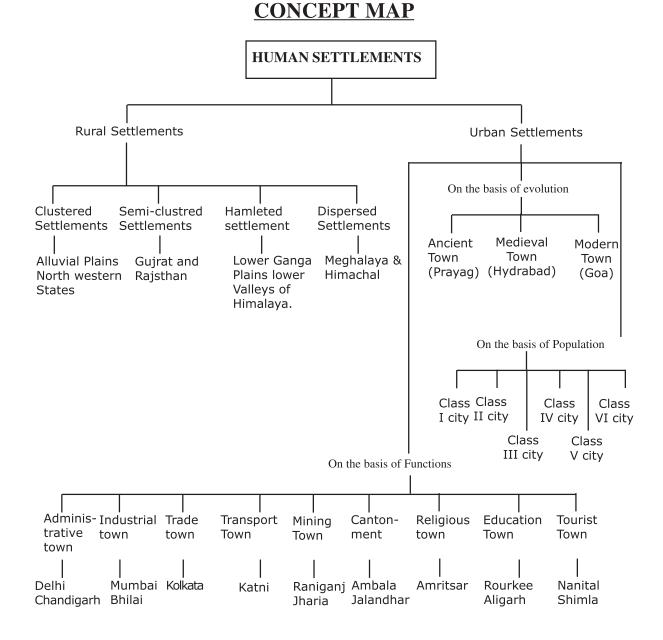
Enhancing people's choices and raising the level of public welfare is human development. Human welfare means long and healthy life, education and social security and higher standard of living. That's why human development is essential.

- 1. It is beneficial to physical and environment resources.
- 2. It can also be helpful in reducing social unrest and increasing political stability and human conditions.
- 3. The important objective of all aspects of human development is to improve human conditions.
- 4. Human development is a means of higher productivity because skilled healthy workers can contribute in increasing production.
- Q.18. Kerala is ranked first in the Human Development index value (0.638) With this statement in mind, mention some factors that are responsible for it.
- Ans. India lies in the category of medium level of Development. It is ranked 136 country. out of 172 nations. Kerala has the highest Human Development index in the country.

Some of the factors responsible for it are:

- 1. Educational achievements
- 2. Level of economic development
- 3. Social environment
- 4. Government efforts
- 5. Planned Development

LESSON - 4 HUMAN SETTLEMENTS



MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

Q.1.	Whi	ch type of settlement is also known as nucleated settlement?
	a)	Hamletted settlements
	b)	Semi-clustered settlement
	c)	Dispersed settlement
	d)	Clustered settlement
Q.2.		places which have a municipality, Cantonment board and a notified town is known as a:
	a)	Metropolitan city
	b)	Census town
	c)	Tourist town
	d)	Administrative town
Q.3.	Any	urban area with more than 1 lakh population is known as:
	a)	Metropolitan City
	b)	Town
	c)	City
	d)	Mega city
Q.4.	In w	which of the following regions we will find hamleted settlements?
	a)	Lower valleys of Himalayas
	b)	Plains of Gujarat and Rajasthan
	c)	Northern Plains
	d)	Northeastern forests and mountains
Q.5.		is the biggest urban agglomeration.
	a)	Delhi
	b)	Mumbai
	c)	Kolkata
	d)	Chennai

Q.6.	and	which of the policies the focus is on sustainable and inclusive development the idea is to look at compact areas, create a replicable model, which will like a lighthouse to other aspiring cities.	
	a)	National livelihood mission	
	b)	Prime Minister urban development policy	
	c)	Smart city mission	
	d)	National mission for urban India	
Q.7.	Which of the following city is not located on a river bank?		
	a)	Agra	
	b)	Patna	
	c)	Kolkata	
	d)	Bhopal	
Q.8.	Wh	ich of the following is not an educational town?	
	a)	Pilani	
	b)	Varanasi	
	c)	Salem	
	d)	Allahabad	
Q.9.	Which of the following is not a garrison town?		
	a)	Lucknow	
	b)	Jalandhar	
	c)	Babina	
	d)	Ambala	
Q.10.	Wh	at is the minimum population for a million city	
	a)	1 Lakh	
	b)	20 Lakh	

10 Lakh

c)

d) 5 Lakh

ANSWER KEY:

Q.11. What are the basic differences between rural and urban settlement? Ans.

Basis	Rural Settlement	Urban Settlement
Economic Activities	The major economic activities in rural areas are agriculture and other primary activities.	The urban settlement is specialised in industries and services.
Dependency	They are dependent on natural resources mainly land for their income.	They provide various types of services like transport and communication, etc.
Agricultural and other products in rural areas support industries of an urban area. Rural areas provide raw material to the industries.	On return, cities provide manufactured goods to rural areas and also to the people of cities.	Inter-relationships
Social life	Social bonds in rural areas are stronger life is simple.	Social bonds in urban areas are formal and life is complex, fast

Q.12. When does an urban area turn into urban agglomeration?

- Ans. Majority of metropolitan and mega cities are urban agglomerations. An urban agglomeration may consist of any one of the following three combinations.
 - (i) A town and its adjoining urban outgrowths,
 - (ii) Two or more contiguous towns with or without their outgrowths, and
 - (iii) A city and one or more adjoining towns with their outgrowths together forming a contiguous spread.
- Q.13. What are hamleted settlement? Name any two regions in India where such settlements are found.
- Ans. Sometimes settlement is fragmented into several units physically separated from each other bearing a common name. These units are locally called panna, para, palli, nagla, dhani, etc. in various parts of the country. This segmentation of a large village is often motivated by social and ethnic factors. Such villages are more frequently found in the middle and lower Ganga plain, Chhattisgarh and lower valleys of the Himalayas.
- Q.14. Explain any three physical factors responsible for different types of rural settlements in India.
- Ans. Physical factors which are responsible for different types of rural settlements in India are:

Nature of Terrain: Nature of terrain plays an important role in determining the shape and size of rural settlements.

For e.g., plain areas have compact and larger settlements with dense population, whereas mountainous areas have scattered and hamleted rural settlements. Meghalaya, Uttarakhand and Himachal Pradesh have such types of rural settlement.

Water Supply: Settlements need water, they often locate on wet point sites for this. For e.g. in Rajasthan, scarcity of water has forced people to live in compact villages for maximum utilisation of available water resources.

Soil fertility: Humans always opt for areas with fertile soil as it is appropriate for agricultural practices.

Climate: People usually prefer areas which have favourable climatic conditions. Harsh climate like very hot and cold regions have less or no

settlements there. For e.g. coastal plains have favourable climate thus, are densely populated regions.

Q.15. Many modern towns developed under British rule. Justify this statement. Ans.

Yes it is true that many modern towns developed under British rule.

- Coastal towns were developed for expansion of trade.
- Many cantonment towns developed like GTB Nagar.
- Many hill stations were developed as centers of recreation
- Britishers also developed nodes like; Mumbai, Chennai and Kolkata.
- Q.16. Unlike rural settlements urban settlements generally are compact and huge. Explain the statement with appropriate examples.
- Ans. Unlike rural settlements urban settlements are compact and large because:
 - Urban settlements are engaged in various types of non-agricultural, economic and administrative functions.
 - Cities are functionally connected to their surrounding areas.
 - Due to the exchange of goods and services, the city market is connected to the chain of cities and towns, hence the cities are of a constant and huge size.
- Q.17. Study the table given below and answer the following questions.

Class	Population Size	Number of Cities	Total Urban Population (In Thousand)	% of Total Urban Population
I	1,00.000 and more	468	2,27,899	60.45
II	50,000 - 99,999	474	41,328	10.96
III	20.000 - 49,999	1,373	58,174	15.43
IV	10.000 - 19,999	1,683	31,866	8.45
V	5.000 - 9,999	1,749	15,883	4.21
VI	Leas than 5,000	424	1,956	0.51

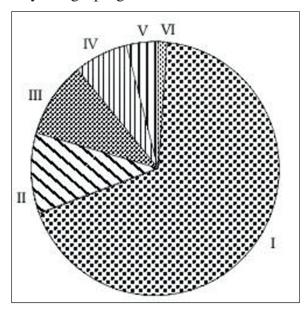
^{*} Source Cencus of india - 2011 and India 2017, Ministry of information and Broadacting, government of india

- 1. Find out the total number of cities with population less than 20, 000. Ans. 3856 (1683+1749+424)
- 2. In which population size the number of cities is the least, tell this number. Ans. Class VI cities

3. State the population e of these cities.

Ans. 1956 thousand

- 4. Which class city has the highest percentage of population? Ans. Class I city
- 5. State the percentage of population in class I city. Ans. 60.45
- 6. State two reasons for higher population in class 1 cities. Ans.
 - 1. More employment opportunities
 - 2. Better facilities of health care and education
 - 3. Migration from rural to Urban areas.
- Q.18. Study the graph given below and answer the following questions.



- 1. Census of India classifies cities into how many classes?
- Ans. Six (6)
- 2. Which class cities have the highest population?

Ans. Class I

3. Which class of cities have the least population?

Ans. VI

4. Which class city has the highest proportion (percentage) of population?

Ans. Class I

5. Which class of cities have the second place in the total urban populat it.

Ans. Class III

6. What is the size of population of cities in class II?

Ans. 50, 000 to 99, 999

Q.19. Describe the characteristics of dispersed settlements in india

Ans. Some of the characteristics of dispersed settlements in India are.

- 1. Dispersed or isolated settlement pattern in India appears in the form of (il isolated huts or hamlets of few huts in remote jungles, jungles or on small hills.
- 2. With farms or pasture on the slopes. Extreme dispersion of settlement is often caused by extremely fragmented nature of the terrain and land resource base of habitable areas.
- 3. Many areas of Meghalaya, Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh and Kerala have this type of settlement

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

Q.20. Into how many categories rural settlements can be classified in India? Write down the names and also elaborate about any two.

Or

Differentiate between clustered and Hamleted settlements.

Ans. Rural settlements in India can broadly be put into four types:

- Clustered, agglomerated or nucleated,
- Semi-clustered or fragmented,
- Hamleted, and
- Dispersed or isolated.

Clustered Settlements: The clustered rural settlement is a compact or closely built up area of houses. In this type of village the general living area is distinct and separated from the surrounding farms, barns and pastures. The closely built-up area and its intervening streets present some recognisable pattern of geometric shape, such as rectangular, radial, linear, etc. Such settlements are generally found in fertile alluvial plains and in the north-eastern states.

Semi-Clustered Settlements: Semi-clustered or fragmented settlements may result from tendency of clustering in a restricted area of dispersed settlement. More often such a problem may also result from segregation of fragmentation of a large compact village. Such settlements are widerspread in the Gujrat plain and some parts of Rajasthan.

Hamleted settlements: Sometimes settlement is fragmented into several units physically seperated from each other bearing a common name. These units are locally called panna, para, palli, nagla, dhani, etc. in various parts of the country. This segmentation of a large village is often motivated by social and ethnic factors. Such villages are more frequently found in the middle and lower Ganga plain, Chhatisgarh and lower valleys of the Himalayas.

Q.21. Classify Indian cities on the basis of functions.

Ans. On the basis of dominant or specialised functions, Indian cities and towns can be brobadly classified as follows:

- 1. Administrative towns and cities: Towns suporting administrative headquarters of higher order are administrative towns, such as chandigarh, New Delhi, Bhopal, Shillong, Guwahati, Imphal, Srinagar, Gandhinagar, Jaipur, Chennei, etc.
- 2. Industrial towns: Industrial constitute prime motive force of these cities, such as Mumbai, Salem, Coimbatore, Modinager, Jamshedpur, Hugli, Bhilai, etc.
- **3.** Transport Cities: They may be ports primarily engaged in export and import activities such as kandla, kochchi, Kozhikode, Vishakha patnam, etc., or hubs of inland transport, such as Agra, Shulia, Mugalsarai, Itarsi, Katni, etc
- **4.** Commercial towns: Towns and cities specialising in trade and commerce are kept in this class. Kolkata, Saharanpur, Satna, etc., are some examples.
- **5. Mining towns :** These towns have developed in mineral rich areas such as Raniganj, Jharia, Digboi, Ankaleshwar, Singrauli, etc

- **6. Garrisson Cantonment towns:** These towns emerged as garrisson towns such as Ambala, Jalandhar, Mhow, Babina, Udhampur, etc.
- 7. Educational towns: Starting as centres of education, some of the towns have grown into major campus towns, such as Roorki, Varanasi, Aligarh, Pilani, Allahabad, etc.
- **8. Religious and cultural towns:** Varanasi, Mathura, Amritsar, Madurai, Puri, Ajmer, Pushkar, Tirupati, Kurukshetra, Haridwar, Ujjain came to prominence due to their religious/cultural significance.
- **9.** Tourist towns: Nainital, Mussoorie, Shimla, Pachmarhi, Jodhpur, Jaisalmer, Udagamandalam (Ooty), Mount Abu are some of the tourist destinations.
- Q.22. Indian cities are classified into how many categories based on their evolution and development?

Or

"Cities in India date back to prehistoric times. Explain with examples.

Ans.

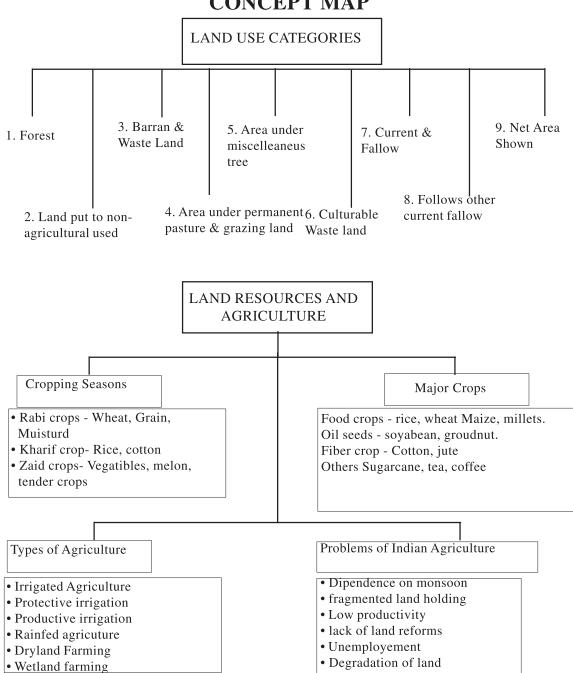
- 1. Ancient Towns: There are number of towns in India having historical background spanning over 2000 years. Most of them developed as religious and cultural centres. Varanasi is one of the important towns among these. Prayag (Allahabad), Pataliputra (Patna), Madurai are some other examples of ancient towns in the country.
- 2. Medieval Towns: About 100 of the existing towns have their roots in the medieval period. Most of them developed as headquarters of principalities and kingdoms. These are fort towns which came up on the ruins of ancient towns. Important among them are Delhi, Hyderabad, Jaipur, Lucknow, Agra and Nagpur.
- **3. Modern Towns:** The British and other Europeans have developed a number of towns in India. Starting their foothold on coastal locations, they first developed some trading ports such as Surat, Daman, Goa, Pondicherry, etc.

4. After independence, a large number of towns have been developed as administrative headquarters, e.g., Chandigarh, Bhubaneswar, Gandhinagar, Dispur, etc., and industrial centres, such as Durgapur, Bhilai, Sindri, Barauni.

LESSON - 5

LAND RESOURCES AND AGRICULTURE

CONCEPT MAP



MULTIPLE CHOICES QUESTIONS

Q.1.	Which of the following is a kharif crop?		
	a) Arhar		
	b) Musturd		
	c) Jute		
	d) Millet		
Q.2.	Agriculture setor contributed percent to the GDP in 1990-91.		
	a) 24.6		
	b) 34.9		
	c) 40.5		
	d) 59.0		
Q.3.	is agricultural density.		
	a) Net sown area/ Gross sown area x 100		
	b) Gross sown area/ Net Sown area x 100		
	c) Gross sown area/ Net Sown area x 100		
	d) None of the above		
Q.4.	In which of the following states three crops of rice are sown namely; oos, Aman and boro,		
	a) Gujarat		
	b) Rajasthan		
	c) Delhi		
	d) West Bengal		
Q.5.	Which of the following is not a Zaid crop?		
(a) Water melon		
	b) Maize		
	c) Cucumber		
	d) All four crops		
	d) All four crops		
Q.6.	Which of the following country has developed high yielding varieties of wheat		
	and rice?		
	a) Mexico and Philippines		
	b) Russia and Japan		

- c) China and Australia
- d) Mexico and America
- Q.7. Which of the following is a feature of Green revolution?
 - a) Increase in productivity
 - b) Development of irrigation
 - c) Use of chemical fertilizer and pesticides
 - d) All the above
- Q.8. Which type of agriculture is practiced in areas that lack in water resources and with less than 50cm:
 - a) Wet agriculture
 - b) Dry agriculture
 - c) Traditional agriculture
 - d) Modern agriculture

ANSWER KEY:

- Q.9. Explain any two features of the three agricultural seasons.
- Ans. India has many growing seasons due to prevalence of high temperature through a long period. Different crop seasons are:
 - (a) **Kharif:** Crops are sown at the beginning of the south-west monsoon and harvested at the end of the south-west monsoon.
 - Sowing seasons May to July
 - Harvesting season September to October
 - Important crops: Jowar, bajra, rice, maize, cotton, groundnut, jute, hemp, sugarcane, tobacco, ete.
 - **(b)** Rabi: Crops need relatively cool climate during the period of growth but warm climate during the germination of their seed and maturation.
 - Sowing season October to December
 - Harvesting season February to April
 - Important crops: wheat, barley, gram, linseed, mustard, masoor, pea—and potatoes.
 - (c) Zaid: Besides the kharif and rabi crops, there are certain crops which are

- being raised throughout the year due to artificial irrigation.
- Zaid kharif crops are sown in August-September and harvested in December-January.
- Important crops: rice, jowar, rapeseed, cotton, oilseeds.
- Zaid Rubi crop are shown in February- March. Harvested is in April-May.
- Important crops: watermelon, cucumber, leafy and other vegatables.
- Q.10. How can agriculture be classified on the basis of main source of moisture? Write two features of each category.

Ans. The classification is:

- 1. Irrigated
- 2. Rainfed
 - •Irrigated: Other than rainfall the scarcity of water is compensated by irrigation. The main objective of this is to ensure proper moisture for agriculture.
 - Rainfed: This type of agriculture entirely depends on rainfall. On the basis of availability of moisture, we classify it into dryland farming and wetland farming.
- Q.11. What is green revolution? What were the reasons for its success?
- Ans. During the decade of 1960-70 there was a spurt in the production of wheat this spurt in production is termed as Green Revolution. The following reasons were responsible for the success of green revolution.
 - 1. High Yielding variety of seeds
 - 2. Use of chemical fertilizers
 - 3. Provision of irrigation

There was record increase in the production of wheat in Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh.

- Q.12. Differentiate between:
 - a) Barren land and culturable waste land
 - b) Net sown area and Gross sown area.
 - c) Dry land farming and wetland farming.

Ans. a)

Barren and Wasteland	Culturable Wasteland
a) Barren and Wasteland refers to land which cannot be brought under cultivation even with the use of present technology.	(a) Culturable wasteland is the land, that is left fallow for more than 5 years
b) It is the land which is depleted due to land degradation or other natural factors. Eg. Ravines of chambal	b) It can be brought under cultivation with present reclamation technologies.

b)

Net Sown Area	Gross Cropped Area
a) The physical extent of land in which crop are sown and harvested in a year is known as the net sown area. This is the area actually cultivated	a) The total area cultivated once, twice, or multiple times in a year is the gross cropped area

c)

Dry land farming	Wet land farming
a) In India it is confined to areas with rainfall of less than 75 cm in a year.	a) Rainfall is more than the total moisture requirement of the soil during rainy season.

Rainfall is less than the total moisture requirement of the soil.	
b) These areas face problems of drought	b) Problems of flash flood and soil erosion are faced.
c) Methods of water conservation are used also water harvesting is carried out	c) Aquaculture is practiced in these areas due to excess of water.
d) Does not take into account multiple cropping.	b) Multiple cropping is taken into account.

Q.13. How the degradation of agricultural land is a serious problem of agriculture sector. Write the causes and consequences.

Ans. Causes of degradation of land

- 1. Over irrigation by canal- which leads to increase in salinity and alkalinity.
- 2. Overuse of insecticides
- 3. Waterlogging
- 4. Leguminous crops have been displaced from the cropping pattern in the irrigated area and duration of fallow land has reduced due to multiple cropping.

Consequences:

- 1. Decline in soil fertility
- 2. Soil erosion
- Q.14. What is the dttterence between current fallow and fallow other than current fallow?
- Ans. **Current fallow:** This the land which is left without cultivation for more one or less than one agricultural year. Fallowing is a cultural practice adopted for giving the land resources. The land regains the lost fertility through natural processes.

Fallow other than current fallow: This is also a cultivable land which is left uncultivated for more than a year but less than five years. If the land is left uncultivated for more than five years, it would be categorized as culturable wasteland.

Q.15. Land use in a region, to a large extent is influenced by the nature of economic activities carried out in that region. Explain the statement with three examples from India.

Ans.

- i) The Size of economy: Measured in terms of value for all the goods and services produced in the economy. With the increase in population the pressure on land has increased.
- ii) Composition of the economy: Secondary and tertiary sectors activities usually grow much faster than the primary sector. This process would result in a gradual shift of land from agricultural uses to non-agricultural uses.
- iii) Thirdly, through the contribution of the agricultural activities reduces over time, the pressure on land for agricultural activities does not decline.
- Q.16. In India the importance of land resources is more for the people whose livelihood depends on agriculture. Elaborate.

Ans.

- i). Unlike secondary and tertiary activities agriculture is completely dependent on land resource.
- ii). Agriculture is affected by quality of land
- iii). In rural areas the ownership of land is associated with economic value as well as social respect.
- Q.17. Write the names of two main beverage crops. Also mention two Important producing states.

Ans. Two important beverage crops are tea and coffee

- 1. Major producers of Tea: Assam, West Bengal and Tamil Nadu
- 2. Major producers of Coffee: Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu
- Q.18. Common property resource is of particular relevance for the livelihood of the landless, marginal farmers and women. Explain.

Ans.

- 1) Common property resources play an important role in the life landless and marginal farmers of rural areas. Due to landlessness, they completely sustain by rearing animals on these lands
- ii) In rural areas it is the responsibility of women to arrange fodder and fuelwood.

iii) Common property resources made available products like' fruits, nuts, fibre, medicinal plants etc.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

- Q.19. Small farm size and land degradation are the two main problems of Indian agriculture. Explain with examples.
- Ans. Two main problems of Indian agriculture are:
 - 1. Small farm size: due to increasing population the size of landholding is gradually decreasing. Almost 60 percent farmers have farm size less than one hectare and it gets further divided as generations progress. The small size of farm will only be able to support subsistence agriculture.
 - 2. Degradation of agricultural land: The degradation of agricultural land is also a serious problem as it is leading to fall in soil fertility. This problem is even more serious in areas where over irrigation is done. A large proportion of agricultural land has turned into barren land due to salinization, alkalinization and waterlogging. Overuse of chemical insecticides is also leading to decrease in soil fertility.
- Q.20. What has been the role of green revolution in the development of agriculture sector in India?
- Ans. India introduced package technology comprising HYVs, along with chemical fertilisers in irrigated areas of Punjab, Haryana, Western Uttar Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh and Gujarat. Assured supply of soil moisture through irrigation was a basic pre-requisite for the success of this new agricultural technology. This strategy of agricultural development paid dividends istantly and increased the food grains production at very fast rate. This spurt of agricultural growth came to be known as 'Green Revolution'.

Some of the characteristics of green revolution are:

- 1. High yielding variety of seeds
- 2. Irrigation facilities
- 3. Chemical fertilizers
- 4. Chemical pesticides and insecticides
- 5. Mechanization
- Q.21. What is the role of agriculture in Indian economy?

Ans.

- 1. India is an agricultural country.
- 2. Nearly two-thirds of its population depends directly on agriculture for its livelihood.
- 3. Agriculture is the main stay of India's economy.
- 4. It accounts for 26% of the gross domestic product.
- 5. It ensures food security for the country and produces several raw material, for industries.
- 6. Agricultural development is therefore, a precondition of our rim national prosperity.

Q.22. Explain and what is Common property Resource and write its main features. Ans.

Land, according to its ownership, land can broadly be classified under two broad heads — private land and common property resources (CPRs.). While the former is owned by an individual or a group of individuals, the latter is owned by the state meant for the use of the community.

CPRs can be defined as community's natural resource, where every member has the right of access and usage with specified obligations, without anybody having property rights over them. Community forests, pasture lands, village water bodies and other public spaces where a group larger that a or family unit exercises rights of use and carries responsibility of management are examples of CPRs.

- 1. CPRs provide fodder for the livestock and fuel for the households along with other minor forest products like fruits, nuts, fibre, medicinal plants, etc.
- 2. In rural areas, such land is of particular relevance for the livelihood of the landless and marginal farmers and other weaker sections since many of them depend on income from their livestock due to the fact that they have lim access to land.
- 3. CPRs also are important for women as most of the fodder and fuel collection is done by them in rural areas. They have to devote long hours in collecting fuel and fodder from a degraded area of CPR.
- Q.23. How has the liberalization policy of 1990's and free market economy influenced

the Indian agriculture?

Ans.

- 1. Liberalization policy and free market economy has reduced the agricultural infrastructure and also the minimum support price has been brought down.
- 2. Due to this policy, the government has reversed the plans of agricultural sector and investment in the agriculture sector has been reduced.
- 3. Subsidies given to farmers on seeds, fertilizers, and pesticides have been reduced.
- 4. Interruptions have been caused in the credit facilities available to farmers.
- 5. Inter-regional disparities have increased.
- Q.24. In the last 50 years there has been unprecedented growth in agricultural production and technology. Justify the statement with appropriate examples.

Ans.

- 1. Many crops such as rice and wheat have shown impressive growth in production and yield. India is the largest producer of pulses and jute in the world and second largest producer of rice, wheat, sugarcane and groundnut.
- 2. promotion of irrigation has played an important role in increasing agricultural production in the country.
- 3. Modern agricultural technology has provided grounds for wide use of HYV seeds, chemical fertilizers, pesticides and insecticides.
- 4. Modern agricultural technology has spread rapidly to certain areas of the country. Utilization of chemical fertilizers also increased manifolds.
- 5. Resisistence is less in high yielding variety of seeds, so the consumption of pesticides has also increared.
- Q.25. Explain the policies implemented in the agricultural sector in the post-independence period.

Ans.

- 1. Prior to Independence, Indian agriculture was primarily meant for the livelihood of the farmer his family. During this period drought and famine were common incidents and people had to face shortage of food grains.
- 2. Soon after attaining independence, the government took several measures to increase the production of food grains

- Promotion of food crops in place of commercial or cash crops.
- Increasing agricultural density
- Converting arable wasteland and wasteland Into agricultural land.
- 3. Central government initiated Intensive area Development program (IADP) and intensive Agricultural Area Program (IAAP) in 1960.
- 4. High Yielding Variety seeds of wheat and rice were introduced in India.

LESSON-6

WATER RESOURCES

CONCEPT MAP WATER RESOURCE SURFACE WATER RESOURCES **GROUND WATER RESOURCES** - Rivers - Well - Ponds - Tube Well - Lakes - Lagoon, Backwater Water conservation & management Recycling of Legislative Watershed Rainwater Preventation water Measures Harvesting of water population Watershed Service Re-charge Lakes Management Wells Wells Proportion of population Distribution of water on earth India's Fresh Population Water 83% World 97% population Saline water % of water in 96% % of water in India

India

IMPORTANT FACTS

- Almost 71% of the earth's surface is covered with water, but the quantity of fresh water is only 3%.
- India has approximately 2.45 % of world's land resources, 16.5% of world's population and only 4% of the world's water resource.
- In India a total of 4000 cusec km water is received from rainfall. The quantity of groundwater is 1869 cusec km.
- Watershed management is related to efficient management of surface and groundwater resources.
- Tamil Nadu is the only state where rainwater harvesting is compulsory.
- There are four sources of surface water; rivers, lakes well. In India the total length of all the rivers and their tributaries is more than 1.6 km. Their number is 10360.
- Increasing population, overuse of water, and water pollution are the main cause of water scarcity.
- The use of groundwater is very high in punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan and Tamil Nadu. Wherares in Chhattishgarh, Odisha, Kerala the use of groundwater is less to its potential.
- In India the maximum use of groundwater is in the agriculture sector.
- Water gets polluted from microorganisms, chemicals, industrial and domestic waste.
- Ganga and Yamuna are the most polluted rivers of India.
- Central and state government's have implemented many watershed management programs.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Which of the following river basin has the least rechargeable groundwater esources?
 - a) Tapi
 - b) Ganga
 - c) Swarnrekha
 - d) Chambal and its tributaries
- Q.2. Read the statements carefully and choose the incorrect statement.

- 1. Water is an abiotic resource
- 2. The quantity of potable water is only 3% for the human use.
- 3. The annual use of rain water is more in Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri as compared to Ganga and Brahmaputra.
- a) Only 1
- b) Only 3
- c) Only 1 and 2
- d) Only 2 and 3
- Q.3. Which chemical has more concentration in water in Bihar?
 - a) Gypsum
 - b) Salinity
 - c) Fluoride
 - d) Arsenic
- Q.4. Which of the following states use maximum groundwater resources?
 - a) Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan and Tamil Nadu
 - b) Chhattisgarh, Odisha, and Kerala
 - c) Gujarat, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Tripura and Maharashtra
 - d) None of the above
- Q.5. The maximum use of surface water and ground water is in:
 - a) Industrial sector
 - b) Agriculture
 - c) Domestic sector
 - d) None of the above
- Q.6. On which river is hirakund dam constructed?
 - a) Satluj
 - b) Vyas
 - c) Mahanadi
 - d) Narmada
- Q.7. The water received from rainfall is:
 - a) Atmospheric
 - b) lithospheric

- c) Saline
- d) Potable
- Q.8. The rain water flowing into rivers, lakes, and ponds, is known as?
 - a) Oceanic
 - b) Surface water
 - c) Groundwater
 - d) Potable water
- Q.9. A. Water resources are gradually declining
 - B. Water pollution is caused by concentration of fluorite and nitrite.
 - a) both A and B are correct and B is the correct explanation of A
 - b) A and B are both correct and B is the correct explanation of A
 - c) A is correct and B is incorrect
 - d) B is correct and A is incorrect
- Q.10. Which state has maximum number of wells and tube wells?
 - a) Tamil Nadu
 - b) Gujarat
 - c) Rajasthan
 - d) Assam

ANSWER KEY:

1-c), 2-b), 3-d), 4-a), 5-b) 6-c), 7-d), 8-b), 9-a), 10-b)

SHORT ANS QUESTIONS (3 MARKS)

Q.11. How industries are responsible for pollution of water resources. Explain with examples.

OR

In India rapid industrialization is leading to depletion of water resources?

- Ans. 1. Industrial waste is disposed without treatment into water bodies.
 - 2. These pollutants cause harm to aquatic animals.
 - 3. Chemicals, Leather, pulp and paper industry are the most polluting industries.

Q.12. Much of the annual water flow in south Indian rivers like the Godavari, the Krishna, and the Kaveri has been harnessed, but it is yet to be done in the Brahmaputra and the Ganga basins.

Ans.

- 1. Ganga and Brahmaputra basins receive more rainfall as compared to basins of south Indian rivers. These rivers are perennial in nature.
- 2. The river bed of north Indian rivers is soft and free of river barriers. Therefore most of the water of these rivers drains in to the oceans and is not utilized.
- 3. Most of the water in the rivers of south India is collected in ponds and reservoirs. Waterfalls and barriers are found along the course of these rivers and hence maximum water of these rivers is utilized.
- Q.13. Why conservation of water resources is important? Explain any three reasons. Ans.
 - 1. Decreasing quantity of potable water
 - 2. Decreasing quantity of fresh water
 - 3. Increasing demand of water
 - 4. Decreasing quality of water due to pollution.
- Q.14. Explain any three negative consequences of the over use of groundwater resources in some states of India.
- Ans. Negative consequences of over exploitation of groundwater resources are:
 - 1. The level of groundwater table has reduced due to over use in Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh.
 - 2. Due to over withdrawal of groundwater water in Maharashtra and Rajasthan the concentration of fluorite has increased.
 - 3. In West Bengal and Bihar arsenic concentration in groundwater has increased.
 - 4. More electricity is required for withdrawal of the groundwater.
- Q.15. Look at the table below and answer the following questions.

Percentage of net irrigated area to total by wells and tubewells.

State	Percentage
Gujarat	86.6
Rajasthan	77.2
Madhya Pradesh	66,5
Maharashtra	65
Uttar Pradesh	58.21
West Bengal	57.6
Tamil Nadu	54.7

- 1. Which state has highest proportion of irrigated land from wells and tube wells and why?
- 2. Which state has lowest proportion of irrigated area from wells and tube wells?
- Ans. 1. Gujarat: The state does not have canals
 - 2. Tamil Nadu: As it is a plateau area so digging wells is a difficult task of the irrigation is done by canals from lakes and ponds.
- Q.16. Study the map given below and answer the following questions.



1. Name two west flowing rivers

Ans. Narmada and Tapi

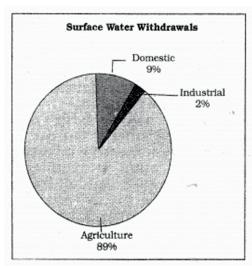
2. In which river basin jammu Kashmir ki located?

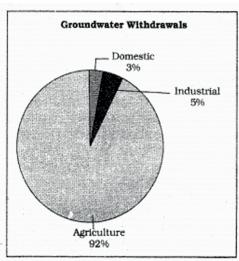
Ans. Indus river

3. Name two major states which lie in the Ganga river?

Ans. Uttar Pradesh and Bihar

Q.17. Study the graph given below and answer the following questions





- 1. Which sector uses the maximum groundwater resource and why? Ans. Agriculture sector as the irrigation needs are fulfilled by groundwater.
- 2. Why the use of groundwater resources is less in domestic sector? Ans.
- A) At many places the groundwater is not potable
- B) At many places groundwater is found at great depths.
- Q.18. Answer the questions with the help of the diagram/picture.



1) Give a proper title for the diagram.

Ans. Rainwater harvesting technique

2) How is water stored through this technique?

Ans. Rainwater is stored on the roof and the stored water is diverted to the underground tank. The stored water is drawn with the help of handpumps.

FIVE MARKS QUESTION

Q.19. What is rainwater harvesting? Analyze the economic and social values associated with rainwater harvesting.

OR

Explain any five uses of rainwater harvesting.

Ans. Rainwater harvesting is the technique of collection and storage of rainwater. Economic and social values of rainwater harvesting are:

- 1. It increases the availability of water which can be used for irrigation and animals.
- 2. It improves the ground water level.
- 3. It reduces flood and soil erosion
- 4. It improves the social bonding amongst people
- 5. It saves the energy required for drawing groundwater resources
- 6. It increases problem solving capability in people
- 7. It improves man-nature relationship

- 8. It brings people close to each other
- 9. It reduces the concentration of fluorite and nitrite in the groundwater hance improving its quality.
- Q.20. Explain the problems faced by water resources in India. Ans.
 - 1. Aavailability: Water resources are excess in some regions such as West Bengal whereas it is deficient in other parts of the country like Rajasthan and peninsular India.
 - 2. Quality: Water pollution is caused by domestic waste, industrial waste and chemical use in agriculture.
 - 3. Usage: Underground water resources could be used in Northern India whereas in Gujarat, Maharashtra, West Bengal, it increases the concentration of arsenic, fluoride and salinity in the soil.
 - 4. Management: The availability of fresh water is less and is also declining whereas the demand of water is getting rapid due to industrialization and urbanization, moreover inter-state water disputes are increasing. There are seepage losses and lack of improved irrigation facilities.
 - 5. Lack of knowledge and awareness: Although water is limited renewable resources it is our responsibility to conserve it. Awareness related to water conservation should be spread for its proper utilisation.
- Q.21. Which steps have been taken by government for watershed management? Explain with four points.

OR

Explain watershed management. What were its main objectives?

Ans. Watershed Management: Efficient Management of surface and groundwater resources is known as watershed management.

Major steps:

- 1. Haryali is a watershed development project sponsored by the Central Government which aims at enabling the rural population to conserve water for drinking, irrigation, fisheries and afforestation. The Project is being executed by Gram Panchayats with people's participation.
- 2. Neeru-Meeru (Water and You) programme (in Andhra Pradesh) which

- means water and you local people were taught various water conservation measures
- 3. Arvary Pani Sansad (in Alwar, Rajasthan) have taken up constructions of various water-harvesting structures such as percolation tanks, dug out ponds (Johad), check dams, etc., through people's participation
- 4. Tamil Nadu has made water harvesting structures in the houses compulsory. No building can be constructed without making structures for water harvesting.

Objectives:-

- 1. Development of agriculture and allied activities like; gardening, forestry and afforestation.
- 2. Increasing agricultural productivity
- 3. Reducing environmental degradation and raising the standard of living of people.
- Q.22. Explain any three factors leading to depletion of water resources. Write any three legislative measures taken for conservation of water resources. Our future generations might have to face threat of scarcity of water resources. Discuss the factors that will lead to this situation.

Ans. Causes of scarcity of water

- 1) Over Utilization: due to increasing population the utilization of water resources is increasing. Over use in domestic as well as industrial sector is leading to this situation.
- 2) More concrete structure in urban areas. Due to increasing industrialization and urbanization most of the urban areas are covered by concrete which leads to less percolation of water which is leading reduction in groundwater resources.
- 3) Less awareness regarding rainwater harvesting: with the help of rainwater harvesting resources can be saved efficiently Awareness among people is important for this so that they understand the significance of harvesting rainwater and also learn various techniques of rainwater harvesting. Rainwater harvesting reduces the burden on groundwater resources.
- 4) Change in Climatic conditions: Due to changes in climate monsoon also varies, which is also leading to fall in surface and groundwater resources.

5) Overutilization of water resources for agricultural purposes: Over utilization of surface and groundwater resources for agricultural purposes is leading to scarcity of water resources. To fulfill the requirement of increasing population multiple cropping is done, which are putting pressure on water resources.

Legislative measures:

- 1) Water (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act 1974.
- 2) Environment Protection Act 1986
- 3) Water Cess Act, 1977 to reduce pollution
- Q.23. Describe the reasons for increasing demand of irrigation in India.
- Ans. Uneven Distribution of rainfall: There is scarcity of rainfall throughout the year. Most of the rainfall in the country is received through monsoon. So, irrigation during dry seasons is not possible.

Erratic Rainfall: Not only the arrival even the total amount of precipitation is variable. This variability can only be taken care through irrigation.

Changing nature of monsoon: There is high variability of uneven distribution of population. Some places receive more rainfall and some places receive less rainfall. So irrigation in such situation becomes even more essential.

Monsoon climate: Indian climate is monsoon type in which rainfall is concentrated in 3 to 4 months. Most of the year is dry season whereas agriculture takes place throughout the year That is why irrigation is crucial for Indian agriculture.

Increasing demand of agriculture based raw material: Due to increasing population the demand of food crops and agriculture based raw material is increasing which makes multiple cropping a need of the hour. That is why the demand for irrigation Is increasing.

Q.24. How is watershed management and rainwater harvesting are efficient ways of water conservation.

Ans. Watershed management

Watershed management basically refers to efficient management and conservation of surface and groundwater resources with community participation.

It involves prevention of runoff and storage and recharge of groundwater through various methods like percolation tanks, recharge wells, etc.

Watershed management includes conservation, regeneration and judicious use of all resources – natural (like land, water, plants and animals) and human within a watershed. Watershed management aims at bringing about balance between natural resources on the one hand and society on the other.

The importance of watershed management in sustainable development has been identified and many programmes both by government and NGOs have been launched for the watershed management. Some examples are—Haryalis, a watershed development project sponsored by the Central Government which aims at enabling the rural population to conserve water for drinking, irrigation, fisheries and afforestation. The Project is being executed by Gram Panchayats with people's participation.

Neeru-Meeru (Water and You) programme in Andhra Pradesh) and Arvary Pani Sansad (in Alwar, Rajasthan) have taken up constructions of various water -harvesting structures such as percolation tanks, dug out ponds (Johad), check dams, -etc. through people's participation. Tamil Nadu has made water harvesting structures in the houses compulsory. No building can be constructed without making structures for water harvesting.

Rainwater Harvesting

Rainwater harvesting has been practised through various methods by different communities in the country for a long time. Traditional rainwater harvesting in rural areas is done by using surface storage bodies, like lakes, ponds, irrigation tanks, etc

In Rajasthan, rainwater harvesting structures locally known as Kund or Tanka (a covered underground tank) are constructed near or in the house or village to store harvested rainwater.

Rainwater harvesting increases water availability, checks the declining groundwater table, improves the quality of groundwater through dilution of contaminants, like fluoride and nitrates, prevents soil erosion, and flooding

and arrests salt water intrusion in coastal areas if used to recharge aquifers.

Q.25. Discuss the features of Jal Kranti abhiyaan initiated by the government of India for ensuring water availability.

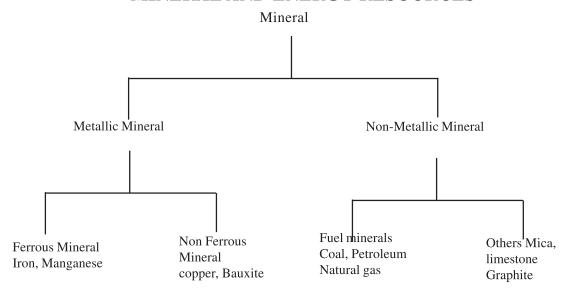
Ans.

The Jal Kranti Abhiyan aims at involving local bodies, NGOs and cititzens, at large, in creating awareness regarding its objectives. The following activities have been proposed under the Jal Kranti Abhiyan:

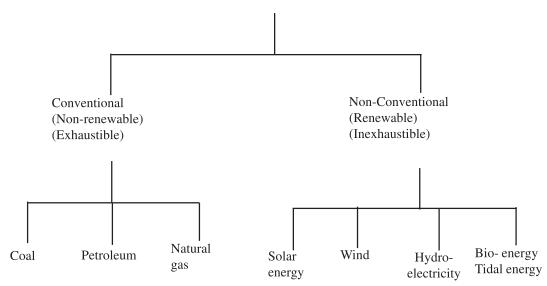
- 1. Selection of one water stressed village in each 672 districts of the country to create a 'Jal Gram'.
- 2. Identification of model command area of about 1000 hectares in different parts of the country, for example, UP, Haryana (North), Karnataka, Telangana, Tamil Nadu (South), Rajasthan, Gujarat (West), Odisha (East), Meghalaya (North-East).
- 3. Abatement of pollution: Water conservation and artificial recharge. Reducing groundwater pollution. Construction of Arsenic-free wells in selected areas of the country.
- 4. Creating mass awareness through social media, radio, TV, print media, poster and essay writing competitions in schools. Jal Kranti Abhiyan is designed to provide livelihood and food security through water security.

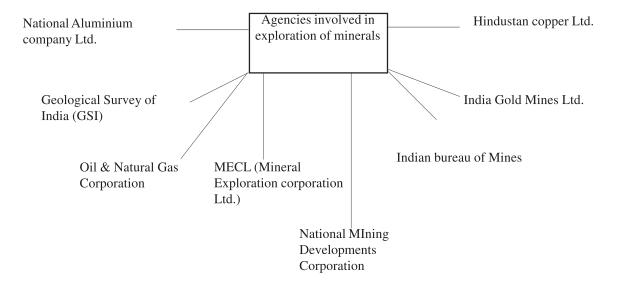
LESSON -7

MINERAL AND ENERGY RESOURCES



ENERGY RESOURCES





Iron and Steel Plants set up with foreign cooperation during 2nd five year plan



Si no.	MINERAL	USES	AREA OF DISTRIBUTION
1.	Iron Ore	Basis for all industries	Odisha, jharkhand, Chhatishgarh, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil nadu
2.	Manganese	Manganese is an important raw material for smelting of iron ore and also used for manufacturing ferro alloys	Odisha, karnataka, Madhya Pradesh
3.	Bauxite	Used in manufacturing of aluminium	Odisha, Gujarat, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka
4.	Copper	Copper is an indispensable metal in the electrical industry for making wires, electric motors, transformers and generators	Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu
5.	Mica	Mica is mainly used in the electrical and electronic industries.	Jharkhand, Andhra Pradesh, Rajasthan

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Which of the following is not a metallic mineral?
 - a) Bauxite
 - b) Mica
 - c) Manganese
 - d) Copper
- Q.2. Read the statements carefully and mark the correct statement.
 - 1) Minerals are evenly distributed over space
 - 2) There is an inverse relationship between the quantity and quality of minerals.
 - 3) Minerals exhaust with time.
 - a) Only 1 and 2 are correct
 - b) Only 2 and 3 are correct
 - c) Only 1 is correct
 - d) 1, 2 and 3 are correct
- Q.3. Which of the following is not involved in the exploration of minerals in India?
 - a) Survey of India
 - b) Indian Gold Mine limited
 - c) Oil and natural Resource commission
 - d) Geological Survey of India
- Q.4. Reflect on the following statements
 - 1) The concentration of iron and steel industry in the north east plateau is due to availability of iron ore, coal, manganese and bauxite and mica.
 - 2) Ores of monozanite and thorium are found in Kerala

Which of the following statement is true:

- a) Only 1
- b) Only 2
- c) Both 1 and 2
- d) Nor 1 not 2
- Q.5. Where are most of the petroleum deposits found in India?

- a) Chota Nagpur, Odisha Plateau, West Bengal and Bihar
- b) Assam, Gujarat and Mumbai high
- c) Karnataka, Goa, Gujarat and assam
- d) Rajasthan, Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh

Mineral

Q.6. Match column A with column B and choose the correct option from below.

i) Rajasthan Lignite coal 1. 2. Petroleum deposits ii) Kerala iii) Gujarat 3. Thorium iv) Tamil Nadu 4. Sandstone i) ii) iii) iv) 1 2 3 4 a) 1 3 4 b) 4 3 1 2 c) 4 3 2 1 d)

State

- Q.7. Read the following statements carefully and choose the correct option.
 - 1. Bauxite is used in the smelling of Iron ore
 - 2. Manganese is used in the manufacturing of aluminium
 - 3. Mica is a non metallic mineral, which is mainly used in electric and electronic industry.
 - a) Only 1 and 2 are correct
 - b) Only 3 is correct
 - c) Only 2 and 3 are correct
 - d) 1,2 and 3 are correct
- Q.8. Which of the following is not a conventional source of energy?
 - a) Coal
 - b) Natural gas
 - c) Bio mass
 - d) Nuclear Energy
- Q.9. Reflect on the following statements about coal

- 1. Coal is used for production of thermal energy and for smelting of iron ore
- 2. The content of carbon in bituminous coal is less than 50%
- 3. The maximum deposits of coal are found in Damodar valley.
- 4. Brown coal is also known as lignite

Which of the above statements is not correct?

- a) Only 1 and 2
- b) Only 2
- c) Only 2 and 4
- d) Only 1, 3 and 4

Q.10. Which of the columns is not matched correctly?

Mining area	State
Bailadila	Madhya Pradesh
Kudremukh	Karnataka
Ratnagiri	Maharashtra
Gua	Jharkhand
	Bailadila Kudremukh Ratnagiri

Q.11. Which of the columns is not matched correctly?

Mineral		Major producer state	
a)	Iron ore	Odisha	
b)	Mica	Jharkhand	
c)	Bauxite	Madhya Pradesh	
d)	Copper	Jharkhand	

ANSWER KEY:

1-b, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c, 5-b, 6-d, 7-b, 8-c, 9-b, 10-, 11-c

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

Q.13. Write any two uses of copper. Mention the major areas of copper.

Ans. Uses of copper

1) Copper is an indispensable metal in the electrical industry for making wires, electric motors, transformers and generators.

- 2) It is alloyable, malleable and ductile.
- 3) It is also mixed with gold to provide strength to jewellery.
- Q.14. Write any two uses of manganese. Mention the major areas of manganese. Ans.
 - 1) Manganese is an important raw material for smelting of iron ore and also used for manufacturing ferro alloys
 - 2) Manganese deposits are found in almost all geological formations, however, it is mainly associated with Dharwar system
 - 3) Mining areas: Odisha, Karnataka, Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh and Jharkhand.
- Q.15. Why is Mumbai high and Sagar Samrat popular?
- Ans. Far from the ocean coast oil is drilled from the ocean bed. This type of oil drilling is referred to as offshore drilling. In the Bombay high oil region oil drilling was started with the help of a ship known as Sagar Samraat in 1947. This place produces the maximum crude oil in the country.
- Q.16. Bio energy is a potential energy resource. It has a lot of significance for rural and urban development in a developing country like India. Explain.

Or

Define bio energy and also explain its benefits.

- 1. Bio energy is the derived from bio products. It includes agriculture waste, Sewage waste and industrial waste.
- 2. Bio energy is environment friendly. This increases the self sufficiency of workers in rural areas and improves their life. It also lessens the dependence on fuelwood.
- 3. This also solves the problem of solid waste management in urban areas and also ensures energy supply.
- Q.17. Write a note on wind energy. Or Wind energy is a completely pollution free and renewable source of energy. Explain.
- Ans. Wind energy is absolutely pollution free, inexhaustible source of energy. The mechanism of energy conversion from blowing wind is simple. The kinetic energy of wind through turbines is converted into electrical energy. The

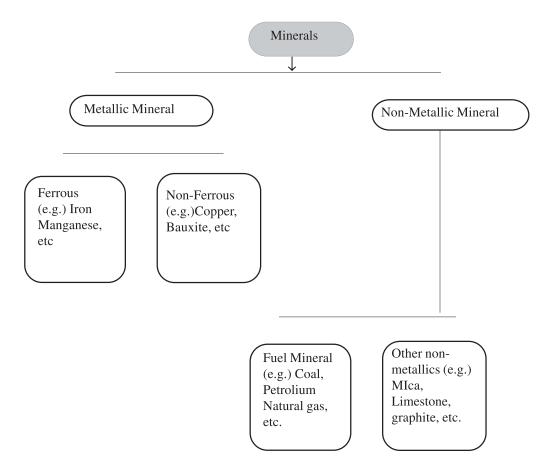
permanent wind systems such as the trade winds, westerlies and seasonal wind like monsoon have been used as source of energy. Besides these, local winds, land and sea breezes can also be used to produce electricity. India, already has started generating wind energy. In Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra and Karnataka, favourable conditions for wind energy exist.

Q.18. Differentiate between conventional and non-conventional sources of energy on the basis of characteristics.

Conventional energy		Non Conventional energy	
(i)	This energy is in use for a long period of time.	(i)	These sources have been recently introduced on a commercial scale.
(ii)	Fossil fuel, such as coal, petroleum, natural gas and nuclear energy are the main sources	(ii)	Solar, wind, hydro, geothermal and biomass are the main sources.
(iii)	These are exhaustible raw materials	(iii)	These are sustainable energy resources- which are Inexhaustible sources of energy.
(iv)	These are concentrated in particular Locations and are limited	(iv)	These energy sources are more equitably distributed and are abundant in nature.
(v)	These sources cause pollution and harm environment	(v)	They are environmental friendly. They provide more sustained, eco-friendly cheaper energy after the initial cost is taken care of.

(vi) Both the installation	(vi) Initial cost is high but the
and running cost is	running cost is low.
high.	

- Q.19. Which mineral is used in the production of nuclear energy. Explain its distribution in India.
- Ans. Important minerals used for the generation of nuclear energy are uranium and Thorium. Uranium deposits occur in the Dharwar rocks. Geographically, uranium ores are known to occur in several locations along the Singbhum Copper belt It is also found in Udaipur, Alwar and Jhunjhunu districts of Rajasthan, Durg district of Chhattisgarh, Bhandara district of Maharashtra and Kullu district of Himachal Pradesh. Thorium is mainly obtained from monazite and ilemenite in the beach sands along the coast of Kerala and Tamil Nadu. World's richest monazite deposits occur in Palakkad and Kollam districts of Kerala, near Vishakhapatnam in Andhra Pradesh and Mahanadi river delta in Odisha.
- Q.20. Mention the three major minerals belts found in India. Ans.
 - 1. The North-Eastern Plateau Region: This belt covers Chhotanagpur (lharkhand), Odisha Plateau, West Bengal and parts of Chhattisgarh. It has variety of minerals viz iron ore coal, manganese, bauxite, mica
 - 2. The South Western Plateau Region: This belt extends over Karnataka, Goa and contiguous Tamil Nadu uplands and Kerala. This belt is rich in ferrous metals and bauxite It also contains high grade iron ore, manganese and limestone This belt lacks in coal deposits except Neyveli lignite.
 - 3. The North Western Region: This belt extends along Aravali in Rajasthan and part of Gujarat and minerals are associated with Dharwar system of rocks. Copper, zinc have been major minerals from this we can conclude that the distribution of minerals is uneven.
- 21. Give the classification of minerals on the basis of physical and chemical characteristics.
- Ans. On the basis of chemical and physical properties, minerals may be grouped under two main categories of metallics and non-metallics which may further be classified as follows:



Metallic minerals are the sources of metals. Iron ore, copper, gold produce metal and are included in this category. Metallic minerals are further divided into

- Ferrous: refers to iron. All those minerals which have iron content are ferrous such as iron ore itself
- Non-ferrous metallic minerals: Those which do not have iron content are non-ferrous such as copper, bauxite, etc.
- Non-metallic minerals are either organic in origin such as fossil fuels also known as mineral fuels which are derived from the buried animal and plant life such as coal and petroleum.
- Other type of non-metallic minerals are inorganic in origin such as mica, limestone and graphite, etc.

- Q.23. Why conservation of minerals needed? How can we conserve them? Ans.
 - i) Minerals are depleted over time
 - ii) It takes a lot of time for their formation.
 - iii) They can not be immediately recharged at the time of need.
 - iv) Conservation of minerals is essential for sustainable development and economic development.

Measures of Conservation

- 1. The alternative energy sources like solar power, wind, wave, geothermal energy are inexhaustible resource. These should be developed to replace the exhaustible resources.
 - 2. Recycling of metallic minerals should be stressed upon.
- 3. Export of scare minerals should be stopped.
- 4. Use of scrap is especially significant in metals like copper, lead and zinc in which India's reserves are meagre.
- 5. Use of substitutes for scarce metals may also reduce their consumption.
- Q.25. Name any five non-conventional sources of energy and also mention a potential area of the resource.

- 1) Solar Energy: In the western part of the country. There is more potential of solar energy in Gujrat and Rajasthan.
- 2) Wind Energy: Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra and Karnataka have immense potential for wind energy.
- 3) Tidal Energy: West coast of India has potential for harnessing tidal energy.
- 4) Geothermal Energy: There is a wide range of possibility of development of geothermal energy in the Himalayan region.
- 5) Bio energy: Comprehensive development of bio energy in rural areas is possible.

Q.26. Non traditional sources of energy provide environment friendly, affordable energy in a more sustainable way despite higher initial costs. Examine the statement.

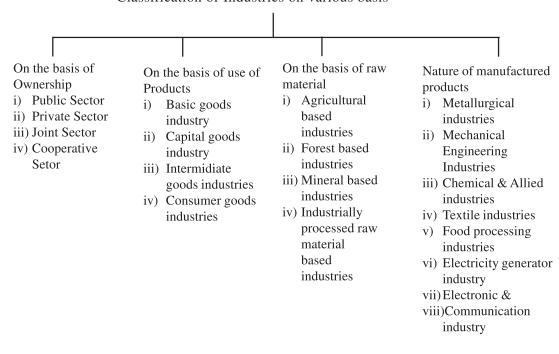
- 1. Solar, wind, geothermal, bio energy etc are non-conventional sources of energy. These are environment friendly.
- 2. They are uniformly distributed
- 3. They are affected by higher initial costs.
- 4. These sources are eco friendly
- 5. Wind energy is completely pollution free
- 6. Ocean currents are an infinite storehouse of energy
- 7. Bio fuel will increase the self sufficiency of rural people and will reduce pressure on fuel wood.

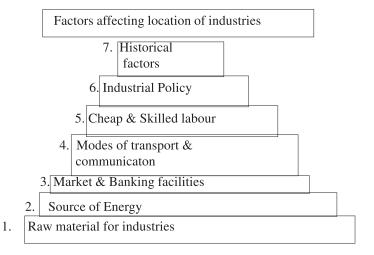
LESSON-8

MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

CONCEPT MAP

Classification of Industries on various basis





MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Read the statements carefully and choose the correct option.
 - 1. Public sector industries are governed by government.
 - 2. Strategic and nationally important industries are not located in the public sector.

Choose the correct option

- a) only 1 is correct
- b) only 2 is correct
- c) Only 1 and 2
- d) Nor 1 not 2
- Q.2. Which column is not matched correctly
 - a. Tata Iron and Steel Industry(TISCO)-Jharkhand
 - b. Indian iron and Steel Company (ISCO)-West Bengal
 - c. Visveswaraya Iron and Steel Works-karnataka
 - d. Bokarao Steel Plant-Bihar
- Q.3. Reflect on the following statements.
 - 1. Indian iron and steel company established it first factory in Jharkhand.
 - 2. Establishment of Steel plants at Bhilai and Rourkela was based on development of Backward tribal districts.
 - 3. The Rourkela Steel plant was established in collaboration with Germany in 1959 in Sundargarh district of Odisha.
 - 4. Bhilai Steel plant was established in collaboration with Germany.

Which of the above statements is not correct

- a) Only 1,2,3
- b) Only 1,3,4
- c) Only 1,4
- d) Only 2,3,4
- Q.4. Durgapur Steel plant is was set up in collaboration with:
 - a) Britain
 - b) Germany

- c) France
- d) Russia
- Q.5. Match column I and Column II and choose the correct option from the options given below.

I (Industry)

II (Location)

- a) Sugar Industry A.
- 1. Bhadrawati
- b) Petro chemical Industry 2. Surat В.
- C. c) Cotton textile industry
- 3. Saharanpur
- D. d) Iron and Steel Industry

1

4. Jamnagar

B C A D

- 4 2 1 a)
- 3 4 b)
- 2 3 1 4 c)
- 3 2 4 1 d)
- Consider the following statements in the context of integrated steel factories: Q.6.
 - Hindustan Steel Limited was established in 1973 to manage integrated steel plants.
 - 2. Durgapur Steel plant gets coal from Noamundi.
 - 3. Bokaro plant was established in 1964 in Collaboration with Russia.
 - 4. Vishakhapatnam steel plant is the first port-based plant in India.

Choose the correct option

- Only 1 is correct
- b) only 1, 2 and 3 are correct
- only 1, 3 and 4 are correct c)
- d) only 2,3,4 are correct
- Where is the largest petroleum refinery located? Q.7.
 - Jamnagar a)
 - Guwahati b)
 - Haldia c)
 - d) Ankleshwar

- Q.8. Consider the following statements in the context of liberalization, privatization and globalization and industrial development in India.
 - 1. Industrial license system was abolished for all industries except for those related to environmental concerns.
 - 2. According to the new policy, no industry needs to get prior consent to invest capital in the unlicensed sector.

Choose the appropriate option.

- a) Only 1 is true
- b) Only 2 is correct
- c) 1 and 2 are correct
- d) None of the above
- Q.9. Electronics, light engineering and electrical equipment industries belong to which of the following industrial region?
 - a) Mumbai-Pune industrial region
 - b) Gurgaon-Delhi-Meerut industrial region
 - c) Vishakhapatnarn-Guntur Industrial region
 - d) Gujarat industrial region

ANSWER KEY:

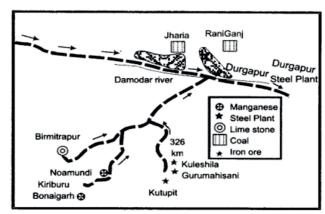
1-a, 2-d, 3-b. 4-a, 5-a, 6-b, 7-a, 8-c, 9-b

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

- Q.11. Iron and steel industry is the base for industrial development of a country. Explain how?
- Ans. Iron and Steel industry is the base for Industrial development because:
 - This industry provides basic raw material for other industries
 - This is the source of machines, transport and equipment, that is why they are known as key to industrial developments.
- Q.12. Name the two sectors of cotton textile industry.
- Ans. The two sectors are: Handloom and power loom (i) Handloom: This sector depends on labour and raw material and the production is also very limited. (ii) Power loom: cloth in this sector is made with machines. 50% of the total

production in the country comes from this sector.

Q.13. i) Identify the iron and steel plant given in the diagram.



Location of steel plant of Durgapur

Ans. Durgapur Steel Plant

ii) Mention the source of water for this plant.

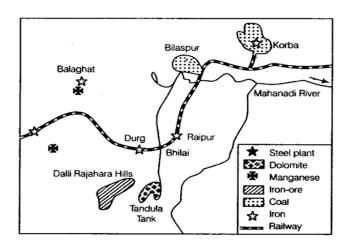
Ans. Damodar River

iii) Mention the coal and iron ore rnines for the plant.

Ans. Coal: Raniganj

Iron Ore: Noamundi

Q.14. I) Identify the steel plants given in the picture and rnention the state it is located in?



Ans. Rourkela is located in Odisha.

ii) Mention the coal and iron ore mines for the plant.

Ans. Coal: Jharia

Iron ore: Sundargarh, Kendujhar

iii) Write the sources of energy and water for the plant.

Ans. Energy: Hirakund project Water: Koel and shankh

Q.15. Why is sugar industry a seasonal industry?

Ans. Sugar industry is a seasonal industry because:

- 1) Sugar industry is totally based on sugarcane as raw material. Sugarcane is a seasonal crop harvested annually. Since sugarcane is a perishable crop and its sucrose content starts to decline within 24 hours only, therefore sugarcane cannot be stored for production of sugar later in the year As a result production of sugar is limited to only harvesting time of the sugarcane.
- 2) The main raw material used for sugar manufacture is sugarcane, which is not available throughout the year, but only in certain specific times of the year.
- 3) In India, January to March is the period of sowing the sugarcane crop and December to March is the period of harvesting of the sugarcane crop.

Q.16. What are heavy industries? Give examples.

Ans. Basic industries using minerals as raw material are known as heavy industries. The raw materials used in this industry and the finished product are also heavy. These industries are the foundation of industrialization. For eg; Steel industry, Machinery, Engineering are counted as heavy industry.

Q.17. Explain any six objectives of the New Industrial Policy (1991).

- (1) Abolition of industrial licensing,
- (2) Free entry to foreign technology,
- (3) Foreign investment policy,
- (4) Access to capital market,
- (5) Open trade,
- (6) Abolition of phased manufacturing programme, and
- (7) liberalised industrial location programme.

The policy has three main dimensions: liberalisation, privatisation and globalisation

- Q.18. Describe the three organizations which are controlling the administration of Chemical and petrochemical Department.
- Ans. Three organisations are working in the petrochemical sector under the administrative control of the Department of Chemicals and Petrochemicals.
 - 1. First is the Indian Petrochemical Corporation Limited (IPCL), a public sector undertaking. It is responsible for the manufacture and distribution of the various petrochemicals like polymers, chemicals, fibres and fibre intermediates.
 - 2. Second is the Petrofils Cooperative Limited (PCL), a joint venture of the Government of India and Weaver's Cooperative Societies. It produces polyester filament yarn and nylon chips at its two plants located at Vadodara and Naldhari in Gujarat.
 - 3. Third is the Central Institute of Plastic Engineering and Technology (CIPET), involved in imparting training in petro-chemical industry.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS)

Q.19. Why are sugar mills concentrated in sugarcane producing areas? Explain any five factors.

- Sugarcane is a weight-losing crop. The ratio of sugar to sugarcane varies between 9 to 12 per cent depending on its variety. Its sucrose content begins to dry during haulage after it has been harvested from the field.
- Better recovery of sugar is dependent upon its being crushed within 24 hours of its harvesting.
- Sugarcane cannot be transported over a long distance as the cost of transportation will increase.
- Most of the sugar mills are in the cooperative sector
- Sugarcane growing areas lie in high population concentration areas which makes cheap labour easily available for the mills.
- Q.20. Describe the factors affecting the location of industries. Ans.

Availability of raw material Sources of Energy Transportation Market Labour Historical Factors

- 1. Availability of raw material: Industries are generally located near the source of raw material. In industries where the weight of raw material is more than the final product, they are located near the source of raw material.
- 2. Source of energy (Power): Before setting up any industry the source of power should be ensured. he equipment and machinery depend completely on a constant supply of power. Aluminum industry is generally located near a power source as its energy requirements are ore.
- 3. Transportation: Cheap and efficient transportation is an important factor, as it is required for transporting the raw material to the industry and for transporting the finished goods to the market.
- 4. Market: Development of industries depend on the availability of market for consumption. A nearby market place makes it much easier to sell goods produced and reduces transportation cost.
- 5. Labour: Industries depend a lot on cheap labour so it prefers a location which is highly populated. Some industries are labour intensive, like the bangle industry of Firozabaad.
- 6. Historical Factors: Mumbai, Kolkata and Chennai were developed during the colonial period. Murshidabad, Bhadohi, Surat, Baroda were developed as industrial towns from ancient times.
- Q.21. Reflect on the development and distribution of cotton textile industry in India.

Ans. Factors responsible for development of cotton textile industry in India are:

- i) Humid climate
- ii) Traditional development of cotton textile industry

Factors for distribution

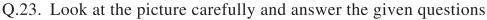
iii) Development of efficient transport facilities in the country

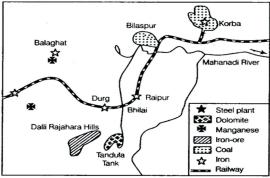
- iv) Cheap and abundant labour
- v) Traditional economic activity since last many generations
- vi) Availability of Electricity
- Q.22. Explain with example what led to the development of the Hugli Industrial Region. What were the impact of partition on this region?

Ans.

- i) Hugli river provides cheap transportation
- ii) Kolkata and haldia ports provode easy import and export facilities
- iii) Power is supplied from Damodar Valley and Chota Nagpur.
- iv) Jute as a raw material is easily available from nearby areas.
- v) Cheap labour is available from densely populated Bihar, Uttar Pradesh and Odisha.
- vi) Kolkata is well connected with railways and roadways.
- vii) Along with jute industry, other industries like; cotton textile, Paper and engineering, chemical fertilizers and petrochemical industries are also well developed

Due to partition the jute industry suffered a setback as a lot of jute producing area went to Bangladesh.





- i) What is the name of this plant and in which state it is located?
- ii) What is the source of iron ore and coal for this plant?
- iii) What is the source of water for this plant?
- iv) With which country's collaboration this plant was established?
- v) Which railway line it is located in?

Ans.

- i) Bhillai steel plant, Chhattisgarh
- ii) Dalli rajhara hills, Tandula tank
- iii) Mahanadi river
- iv) Russia
- v) Kolkata Mumbai railway line
- Q.24. What are the problems of cotton textile industry in India?
- Ans. Cotton textile industry is the largest organized industry in the country, but some of the problems of this industry are as follows
 - i) There is a shortage of raw material, particularly of long staple cotton, which is imported from other countries.
 - ii) Use of old and obsolete machinery.
 - iii) For modernization of the machinery, we need more import from outside.
 - iv) The cotton industry is facing tough competition from the fibre industry and handloom industry.
 - v) There is also tough competition from the clothes made in china and japan.
- Q.25. What do you understand by liberalisation, Privatization and globalisation? How these have helped in industrial development in India?
- Ans. Liberalisation: Liberalisation is **the process or means of the elimination of the control of the state over economic activities.** It provides greater autonomy to the business enterprises in decision-making and eliminates government interference.

Features of Liberalisation

- 1. The industrial licensing system has been abolished for all except six industries related to security, strategic or environmental concerns.
- 2. Freedom to use foreign technology in India
- 3. Liberalisation of foreign trade
- 4. Open trade

Privatisation: To include more and more industries in the private sector. Its objective is to encourage privatisation of mining, communication, and transport.

Globalisation:

- 1. Globalisation means integrating the economy of the country with the world economy. Under this process, goods and services along with capital, labour and resources can move freely from one nation to another.
- 2. The thrust of globalisation has been to increase the domestic and external competition through extensive application of market mechanism and facilitating dynamic relationship with the foreign investors and suppliers of technology.

Liberalisation, Privatization and globalisation has helped Indian industry in the following ways:

- 1) Foreign cooperation has increased.
- Q.26. Explain with examples the factors responsible for development of Mumbai Pune industrial region.

Ans.

- 1. Development of this region started with the establishment of cotton textile industry in Mumbai.
- 2. Due to moist climate cotton textile industry flourished in this area.
- 3. The opening of Suez canal encouraged the development of Mumbai port.
- 4. With the development of Mumbai high and nuclear power plant in the region it got a boost.
- 5. Apart from cotton textile industry also industries like engineering, petroleum refining, petrochemicals are also developed in this region.
- 6. Pune is also developing as a hub of IT industry also.
- 7. To meet the needs of these industries, hydroelectricity has been harnessed in the western Ghat region.
- Q.27. Describe any five features of the Gujarat Industrial region.

- 1. This region lies between Ahmedabad and Baroda. This place extends to Valsad and Surat in the south and till Jamnagar in the west.
- 2. This area is an important centre of cotton textile industry. Apart from cotton textile industry, petrol, chemical industry, engineering industry and pharmaceutical industry are major industries here.

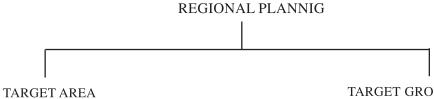
- 3. The state gets the benefit of both raw material and market due to the location in cotton growing area.
- 4. Kandla port has helped in accelerating the industrial development of this region.
- 5. Petrochemical industry developed in this region due to presence of Koyali oil refinery.
- Q.28. Discuss the factors responsible of establishing iron and steel industry in Chotta Nagpur region.

- 1. Availability low cost of iron ore around the region.
- 2. Availability of high qualities of raw material: Other heavy raw materials like coal, limestone, manganese, Mica etc are available in good quantity.
- 3. Availability of cheap labour: Labour become available at low cost from nearby areas of Bihar, Jharkhand and Odisha.
- 4. Dense network of transportation: this region is well connected by road and railways.
- 5. Energy: Energy requirements are met through thermal and hydropower plants from the Damodar valley.
- Q.29. Define Manufacturing. Give the classification of manufacturing on the basis of size. Give one characteristic of the each.
- Ans. The process of converting raw material into manufactured goods is known as manufacturing industry. For example manufacturing cotton textiles from cotton plant.
 - Small scale industry: Cottage or household industries are a type of small scale industry where the products are manufactured by hand, by the artisans. These industries use lesser amount of capital and technology as compared to large scale industry.
 - Large scale industry: These are industries that produce large volumes of products. Investment of capital is higher and the technology used is superior in large scale industries.

LESSON-9

PLANNING AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT IN INDIA **CONCEPT MAP**

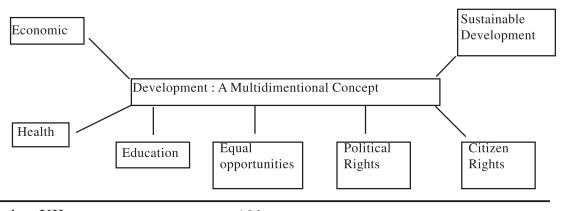




- 1. Command controlled area
- 2. Daught prone area development
- 3. Hill Area Development
- 4. Desert Development Area

TARGET GROUP

- 1. Small farmers development Agency(SDFA)
- 2. Marginal farmers development Agency



OBJECTRVE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Reflect on the following statements:
 - 1) India follows decentralised planning
 - 2) The responsibility of planning lies with the planning commission.
 - 3) The reason of delay in the eighth five-year plan was tension with the neighbouring countries.

Which of the above statement is true:

- a) Only 1
- b) Only 1 and 3
- c) Only 2
- d) Only 1, 2 and 3
- Q.2. Which of the following is not a drought prone area?
 - a) Western Madhya Pradesh
 - b) Western Ghats
 - c) Telangana Plateau
 - d) Gujarat
- Q.3. Under which five year plan the Hill Area Development program was started?
 - a) 5th five-year Plan
 - b) 11th Five Year Plan
 - c) 9th frve Year Plan
 - d) 7th Five Year Plan
- Q.4. What was the main purpose of implementing the fifth five year plan for the drought prone areas?
 - a) To provide employment
 - b) Solving the scarcity of water
 - c) Development of transport modes
 - d) None of the above
- Q.5. Reflect on the following statements related to sustainable development.
 - 1. The definition of sustainable development was given by the UNEP organisation of UN
 - 2. It refers to continuity in the availability of opportunities. This means that

each generation must have the same opportunities, therefore we must use our environmental, financial and human resources in such a way that our future generations are not deprived off these opportunities.

Choose the correct option

- a) Only 1
- b) Only 2
- c) 1 and 2
- d) Nor 1 not 2
- Q.6. Which of the option is not matched correctly:

Column I

Column II

- a) The Population Bomb
- i) Aherlich
- b) The Limit to Growth ii)
- Midos
- c) Growth and Equity
- iii) Mahatma Gandhi
- d) Our Common Future iv)
- Garo Harlem Bruntland
- Q.7. What is ITDP used for?
 - a) Integrated Trade Development Program
 - b) Integrated Tourism Development Program
 - c) Integrated Tribal Development Program
 - d) Integrated Transport Development program

ANSWER KEY

1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-a, 5-b, 6-c, 7-c

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

Q.11. Differentiate between Sectoral planning and Regional planning.

Sectoral Planning: Sectoral planning means formulation and implementation of the sets of schemes or programmes aimed at development of various sectors of the economy, such as agriculture, irrigation, manufacturing, power, construction, transport, communication, social infrastructure and services.

Regional Planning: There is no uniform economic development over space

in any country Some areas are more developed and some lag behind. This uneven pattern of development over space necessitates that the planners have a spatial perspective and draw the plans to reduce regional imbalance in development. This type of planning is termed as regional planning.

Q.12. There are regional imbalances in development. Explain the statement with appropriate examples.

Ans.

The regional imbalances in development is clearly reflected in.

- i) Coastal areas are poorer than the internal parts
- ii) Development is more widespread in the field commercial agriculture. In Punjab and Kerala inequality is less in rural and urban areas.
- iii) Tribal areas are still less developed.
- iv) Geographically difficult terrains and dry and uneven terrains, plateau, areas, flood prone areas and drought prone areas are still backward.
- v) There are also large disparities in literacy rates in different areas and : there is also great variation in the literacy rate of women.
- Q.13. With the development of agriculture and animal husbandry alone, sustainable development cannot be achieved in the Indira Gandhi Canal Command Area.

Ans.

- 1. In this area agriculture and allied activitie needs to be developed along with other sectors of economy.
- 2. This region needs to be diversified economically.
- 3. Establishment of functional linkages between centres and market centres.
- Q.14. Explain the importance of Indira Gandhi Canal in providing water for irrigation in the Canal Command area.

OR

Due to commencement of canal irrigation there has been a ecological, economic and social transformation in the region. Explain with examples.

Ans.

1. Irrigation in Stage-I command area of the canal was introduced in early 1960s, whereas, the command area of Stage-II began receiving irrigation in mid 1980s. The introduction of canal irrigation in this dry Land has transformed its ecology, economy and society.

- 2. Irrigation in Stage-I command area of the canal was introduced in early 1960s, whereas, the command area of Stage-II began receiving irrigation in mid-1980s. The introduction of canal irrigation in this dry land has transformed its ecology, economy and society.
- 3. Canal irrigation has brought about a perceptible transformation in the agricultural economy of the region. Spread of canal irrigation has led to increase in cultivated area and intensity of cropping. The traditional crops sown in the area, gram, bajra and jowar have been replaced by wheat, cotton, groundnut and rice.
- 4. This has also helped in reducing wind erosion and siltation of canal systems.
- 5. This intensive irrigation, no doubt, initially has led to tremendous increase in agricultural and livestock productivity.

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

Q.15. What the things noted prominently while planning for the development of mountainous regions?

Ans.

While planning for the development of hilly areas their geography, ecology, topography and economic conditions should be taken into consideration. Apart form this the following points need to be considered.

- 1. All people should benefit from it, not only the rich and influential
- 2. Development of local resources and talents
- 3. Making the livelihood economy investment oriented
- 4. Non exploitation of backward areas in regional trade.
- 5. To improve the market system of backward areas and benefit the labourers.
- 6. To maintain ecological balance.
- Q.16. What kind of programs were initiated for people under the Drought Prone area Program?

- 1. This programme was initiated during the Fourth Five Year Plan with the objectives of providing employment to the people in drought-prone areas and creating productive assets.
- 2. Initially, this programme laid emphasis on the construction of labour-intensive civil works to provide more employment to people.

- 3. It emphasised on irrigation projects, land development programmes, afforestation, grassland development and creation of basic rural infrastructure, such as electricity, roads, market, credit and services.
- 4. The other strategies of development of these areas include adoption of integrated watershed development approach at the micro-level.
- 5. The restoration of ecological balance between water, soil, plants, and human and animal population should be a basic consideration in the strategy of development of drought-prone areas.
- Q.17. What steps have been taken for the development of the Bharmaur region? What were its social and economic consequences?

Or

Explain the Social and economic benefits incurred with the launch of the Integrated Tribal Development Project in Bharmaur.

Ans. The area development plan will enhance the quality of life of the residents of Bharmaur region and bring the area parallel to other regions of Himachal Pradesh in terms of development.

The following steps were taken for this:

- 1. Development of basic infrastructure such as schools, hospitals was done
- 2. Attention was given to availability of clean water, roads, communication system and electricity was given.
- 3. Encouraged new and eco-friendly methods of agriculture.
- 4. Scientific methods of animal husbandry were encouraged.

Social and economic effects:

- 1. Increased literacy rate among people especially women.
- 2. Production of pulses and other cash crops increased.
- 3. Liberated the society from social evils like child marriages.
- 4. Sex ratio improved
- 5. People's standard of living improved.
- Q.18. Describe any five measures for encouraging sustainable development in the Indira Gandhi Canal Command Area.

Ans.

(i) The first requirement is strict implementation of water management policy.

- The canal project envisages protective irrigation in Stage-I and extensive irrigation of crops and pasture development in Stage-II.
- (ii) In general, the cropping pattern shall not include water intensive crops. It shall be adhered to and people shall be encouraged to grow plantation crops such as citrus fruits.
- (iii) The CAD programmes such as lining of water courses, land development and levelling and warabandi system (equal distribution of canal water in the command area of outlet) shall be effectively implemented to reduce the conveyance loss of water.
- (iv) The areas affected by water logging and soil salinity shall be reclaimed.
- (v) The eco-development through afforestation, shelterbelt plantation and pasture development is necessary particularly in the fragile environment of Stage-II.
- (vi) The social sustainability in the region can be achieved only if the land allottees having poor economic background are provided adequate financial and institutional support for cultivation of land

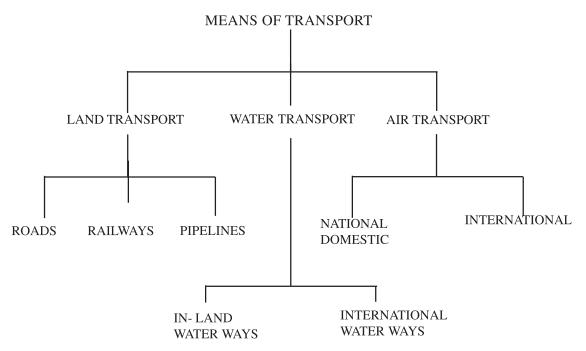
Q.19. Why is planning important for the development of any country? Ans.

- 1. Planning is an important part of sustainable development for a country like India
- 2. The main objective of planning is multidimensional development like in the field of agriculture industry Education which would be sustainable.

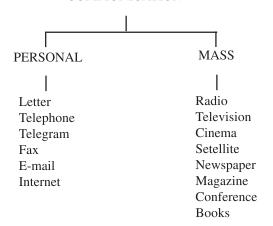
LESSON-10

TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATION

CONCEPT



COMMUNICATION



MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Which of the following organization has been established to improve the quality of roads designated as National Highways in India?
 - a) NHAI (National Highway Authority of India)
 - b) Central Public works Department (CPWD)
 - c) Public Works Department (PWD)
 - d) State Highway Development Authority (SRDA)
- Q.2. What is the expansion of National Waterway -I?
 - a) Sadia to Dubri
 - b) Allahabad to Haldia
 - c) Kottapuram to Kollam
 - d) Kaakinara to Puducherry
- Q.3. Consider the following statement and choose the appropriate option from the given alternatives.
 - 1. Construction of roads is cheap and easier in plain areas.
 - 2. The nature of terrain and the economic development are the major determinant of the density of roads.

Options

- a) Only 1 is correct
- b) Only statement 2 is correct
- c) Both the statements are correct but not mutually related
- d) Both the statements are correct and statement 2 is the correct description of 1.
- Q.4. Which of the following is the cheapest mode of transport and the most suitable for transporting heavy goods?
 - a) Road transport
 - b) Water transport
 - c) Rail Transport
 - d) Air Transport
- Q.5. Which of the following pairs are correctly matched?

Railway	Zone Heado	uarter
---------	------------	--------

- a) Eastern Kolkata
- b) Southern New Delhi
- c) Northern Mumbai
- d) Western Chennai
- Q.6. Which of the following options represents the correct names of the cities connected by Golden Quadrilateral project?
 - a) Delhi, Mumbai, Pune, Chennai
 - b) Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, Kolkata
 - c) Delhi, Jaipur, Mumbai, Kolkata
 - d) Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, Patna
- Q.7. Which of the following places are the stations at the end of the East West corridor?
 - a) Silchar- Porbandar
 - b) Srinagar- Kanyakumari
 - c) Varanasi-Kanyakumari
 - d) Kolkata-Amritsar
- Q.8. Which of the following pipeline is the first cross country pipeline in India?
 - a) Jaipur- Jagdishpur Pipeline
 - b) Ankleshwar-Koyali
 - c) Naharkatiya Barauni
 - d) Mubai high-Koyali
- Q.9. Other roads in India mainly include:
 - a) Border roads
 - b) Rural roads
 - c) National Highways
 - d) State Highways

Q.10.	Fill in the blanks On the basis of configuration and purposes, satell	ite system
	in India can be grouped into two:	

-1			
- 1			

2		

- Q.11. Which of the following means of transport in India is highly convenient for transportation of gas and liquid.
 - a) Water transport
 - b) Air transport
 - c) Pipelines
 - d) Road transport

ANSWER KEY:

1-a, 2-b, 3-d, 4-c, 5-a, 6-b, 7-a, 8-c, 9-a, 10.1 INSAT, 10.2- IRS, 11-c

SHORT ANS QUESTIONS (3 MARKS QUESTION)

Q.12. When was the Konkan railway built? Give a detailed description. (2016)

Ans. The Indian konkan Railway was constructed in 1998. Its main features are following:

- 1. This rail route connects Roha(Maharashtra) to Mangalore in Karnataka. It is 760 km long.
- 2. This rail road crosses 146 rivers and streams and 2000 bridges and 91 tunnels.
- 3. Asia's longest tunnel lies on this route
- 4. This project includes the states of Karnataka, Goa, and Maharashtra.
- Q.13. What are the main problems of Indian railways?

Ans. Indian railways is facing many problems

- Indian railways is plagued with many problems.
- The railway lines are not of high standard, accidents are frequent
- Many people travel without tickets
- Railway lines are not enough
- Electrification of railway lines is not yet done properly
- The signal system also is not very efficient
- Q.14. What is free air policy?

Ans. Government started the free air policy in 1992 to help Indian exporters and to make their shipments competitive. According to this policy any cargo plane

belonging to the organization of foreign exporters can enter the Indian territory. This policy encouraged foreign export through airline transport.

Q.15. Describe any three benefits of satellite communication.

Ans.

- Satellites are modes of communication and they also regulate others means of communication.
- Continuous availability of view of a wide area using satellite is important for economic and strategic reasons.
- Weather forecasting by satellite images can be used to monitor disasters.
- Satellites are also very important to guard the border areas.
- Q.16. "Growth of transport and communication system in urban areas is giving rise to many kinds of problems". Explain this statement with appropriate example.
- Ans. Growing transport in urban areas is giving rise to problems like traffic jams and environmental pollution. Whereas in mountainous and plateau regions other kinds of problems are arising due to unplanned development of transport. The 2013 Kedaarnath disaster was a consequence of it.

The development of transport and communication in urban areas is leading to many kinds of deseases like mental stress, high blood pressure, anxiety etc. Urban ecology is getting affected

- Q.17. When and why the 'Border Road Organization established?
- Ans. The Border Road Organisation (BRO) was established in May 1960 for accelerating economic development and strengthening defence preparedness through rapid and coordinated improvement of strategically important roads along the northern and north-eastern boundary of the country. It is a premier multifaceted construction agency. It has constructed roads in high altitude mountainous terrain joining Chandigarh with Manali (Himachal Pradesh) and Leh (Ladakh). This road runs at an average altitude of 4,270 metres above the mean sea level.
- Q.18. Railways have a profound contribution in the economic progress of the country. Explain.
- Ans. Indian rail network is one of the longest rail networks in the world. It has major contribution in the economic development of the country:
 - 1. Coal is carried by rail transport. Most of the heavy materials are

- transported by railways.
- 2. Rail also delivers finished goods to market.
- 3. Goods imported from other countries are also distributed within the country through railway network.
- 4. Replacement of coal fried steam locomotives have proved beneficial for the environment.

In this way, railways help in transportation of passengers and goods from far and wide places and hence help in the development of industry and agricultural sector.

Q.19. Write the characteristics of pipeline transport.

or analyse the importance of pipelines as a mode of transport.

Ans.

- It can be easily laid on any type of surface.
- It is cheaper to use for a long time
- Saves time
- Does not lead to pollution
- Useful for transportation of liquid and gaseous substance.
- Q.20. Name the major important international airports of India.

Ans.

Delhi Indira Gandhi International Airport
Mumbai Netaji Subash Chandra Bose Airport
Chennai Meenabakkam International Airport

Amritsar Sri Guru ram dass Jee International Airport Thiruvananthapuram Thiruvananthapuram International Airport

Q.21. Why road transport is considered more useful in comparison to other modes of transport?

- 1. Roads can be constructed in undulating topography.
- 2. Roads provide door to door service.
- 3. Road transport act as feeder transport to other modes of transport.
- 4. Perishable items can be easily transported through road transport.
- 5. Road transport is convenient for small distance travel.

- 6. Construction and maintenance of roads is relatively easy and cheap.
- Q.22. Internet is the most effective and up to date personal communication system. Explain the statement with examples.

Or

Which is the most efficient and effective communication system in India. Describe its characteristics.

Ans.

- 1. Internet presents information as well as data on various items (topics).
- 2. It is widely used in urban areas.
- 3. It provides accessibility to information at a lower cost.
- 4. It has maximum usage for e commerce and electronic transactions.
- 5. Detailed in formation can be received through email.
- Q.23. Which two types of roads are included in the other category of roads? Ans. The other category of roads include:
 - 1. Border Roads
 - 2. International

Border Roads: The Border Road Organisation (BRO) was established in May 1960 for accelerating economic development and strengthening defence preparedness through rapid and coordinated improvement of strategically important roads along the 2020-21 northern and north-eastern boundary of the country. It is a premier multifaceted construction agency. It has constructed roads in high altitude mountainous terrain.

International roads: The international highways are meant to promote the harmonious relationship with the neighbouring countries by providing effective links with India

Q.24. 'Indian rail network facilitates the movement of freight and passengers and also contributes to the economic development of India'. Establish the above statement in view of the reforms introduced by Indian railways. (CBSE 2012)

- 1. A comprehensive program was stated to convert meter and narrow gauge into broad gauge.
- 2. Steam locomotives were replaced by diesel and electric locomotives.

- 3. As trains speed increased its carrying capacity also increased.
- 4. Metro trans was started
- 5. Railways were extended on other states also. Construction of the Konkan railways was a big achievement for Indian railways.
- 6. Railway reservation was computerised and other facilities were also enhanced.
- Q.25. "Road distribution is not uniform in India'. Confirm the statement with appropriate arguments.

Ans. The factors responsible for uneven distribution of roadways are:

- 1. Topography: Mountain, Plateau, Plain and desert
- 2. Economic Development: Agricultural development, Industrial development.
- 3. Population Distribution: High, Medium and Low Population
- 4. Government policies
- 5. Climate (Elaborate these points)
- Q.26. Analyse the role of Inland waterways Authority of India. Why inland waterways are an important mode of transport?(CBSE 2016)

Ans.

- 1. For the development and maintenance of national water ways the Inland waterways Authority of India was established in 1986.
- 2. The authority declared five waterways As National waterways
- 3. The authority also identified 10 water ways which will be upgraded.

Importance of Inland waterways

- 1. This is a cheap means of transport It is convenient for transport of heavy goods.
- 2. It is fuel efficient and eco-friendly mode of transport.
- 3. An important mode of transport for passengers as well as freight.
- Q.27. Why rail transport remains the main mode of transport for the general public in India? Explain.

- 1. Indian rail network is one of the longest rail network in the world.
- 2. It contributes to smooth transportation of goods and passenger transport.
- 3. It contributes to the economic growth of the country.
- 4. It performs the unique task of bringing together the people of diverse culture.
- 5. Indian railway connects the country with North to South and West to
- 6. It is a cheap mode of transport.
- Q.28. Name the main railway zones and their headquarters.

Railway Zone	Headquarters
Central	Mumbai CST
Eastern	Kolkata
East Central	Hajipur
East Coast	Bhubaneswar
Northern	New Delhi
North Central	Allahabad
North Eastern	Gontichpur
North East Frontier	Maligaon (Guwnhati)
North Western	Jaipur
Southern	Chennai
South Central	Secunderabad
South Eastern	Kolkata
South East Central	Bilaspur
South Western	Hubli
Western	Mumbai (Church Gate)
West Central	Jabalpur

Q.29. "India's road network is one of the largest in the world. Confirm the statement with examples.

Ans.

- 1. The total length of roads in India is 54.8 lakh km.
- 2. About 85% of the passengers and 70.5% of the goods are transported through roads.
- 3. The roads were concentrated in urban areas and the rural and remote areas in their vicinity.
- 4. Many projects and policies were implemented for the development of roads.
- 5. Under the Pradhan Mantri Gram sadak Yojna rural roads were connected with other roads.
- 6. Several super expressways were constructed.
- Q.30. Analyse the importance of water transport in india and the reason for its low pularity.

Or

Water transport is an important means of transport in India. In context of the statement explain the importance of water resources.

Or

"Waterways in India is an important mode of transport passengers and goods". Explain with examples.

Ans.

- 1. It is the cheapest mode of transport.
- 2. Best suited for transporting heavy materials.
- 3. There is no need to construct a route for this mode of transport.
- 4. India is surrounded by water from three sides and has long coastline.
- 5. It is a fuel efficient and eco-friendly mode of transport.
- 6. Waterways contribute about 1% to the country's transport sector.
- 7. This includes, rivers, canals, backwater and narrow culverts.

Reasons for declining popularity of water transport.

- 1. Competition from railways
- 2. Improper maintenance of waterways.
- 3. Diversion of water for irrigational needs.
- Q.31. "Pipelines are efficient and useful mode of transport". Explain the statement. (CBSE 2019)

Ans.

- 1. Solid material can be converted into slurry and it can be transported through pipelines.
- 2. Oil is transported to oil refineries and fertiliser units for further processing through pipelines.
- 3. In the western part of the country Ankleshwar -koyali pipeline, Mumbai High and Koyali pipelone and Hazira and Vijaypur Pipelines were laid
- 4. A pipeline from Gujarat to Mathura has been laid.
- 5. This is a safe mode of transport.

Q.32. Write down the characteristics of National Highways.

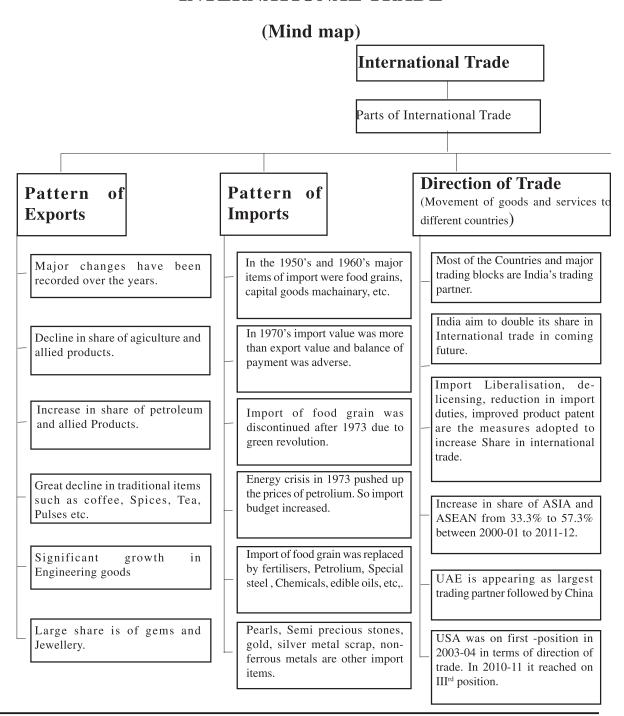
Or

Explain any five characteristics of National Highways in India.

- 1. These national highways are constructed and maintained by the Central Government(NHAI).
- 2. These national highways are used for international travel and to deliver or transport defence material to the bordering areas.
- 3. These roads connect the capitals of states with important towns, ports and railway junctions.
- 4. In 2008-09 the total length of the National highways was 70934 km.
- 5. These roads cover 1.67% of the total length of the country.
- 6. NHAI (National Highway Authority of India) is responsible for the maintenance of these highways.

LESSON-11

INTERNATIONAL TRADE



Portrs

(Gateway of International Trade)

KANDALA PORT - Tidal port situated at the head of gulf of Kutch. Specialised for petrolium Products.

MUMBAI - Natural harbour and the biggest port of the Country.

JAWAHAR LAL NEHRU - In Nhava sheva of developed as satellite port for mumbai.

MARMAGAO - Situated at the eutrance of the Zuari estuary significant for iron are export to japan.

NEW MANGALORE - Karnataka is major hinterland specialised for iron ore.

KOCHI- At the head of Vembanand Koyal and knows as 'Queen of Arabian Sea'

KOLKATA - At Hugli river and confronted with the problem of silt accumulation at Kolkata port.

HALDIA - constructed to reduce congestion at Kolkata port.

PARADWIP- Situated in Mahannadi delta, having deepest harbour specially for large vessels.

VISHAKHAPATANAM - In Andhra Pradesh with land locked harbour

CHENNAI - Oldest port on east coast with artificial harbour

ENNORE - Newly developed port in Tamilnadu to relive Chennai port

TUTICORIN - It was also developed to decongest- Chennai port.

Air Ports

Take least time for carrying and handling goods

Good for high Value and Perishable goods

Very costly unsuitable for heavy & bulky goods

MAJOR AIRPORTS

- Ahmedabad
- Amritsar
- Bengaluru
- Chennai
- DelhiGoa
- Guwahati
- Hyderabad
- Kochi
- Kolkata
- Mumbai
- Thiruvananthpuram
- Srinagar
- Jaipur
- Calicut
- Nagpur
- Port Blair
- Coimbatore

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- Q.1. Which of the following statement is not true about the international trade of india?
 - (a) There is sharp rise in overseas trade in India's foreign trade.
 - (b) India's contribution in foreign trade is only 1%.
 - (c) Both export and import have increased in India.
 - (d) Export value is more than import value in India.
- Q.2. Which of the following factors is responsible for the decline in traditional item in the international trade?
 - (a) The tough international competition.
 - (b) The Liberal Policies of the government.
 - (c) Lack of market
 - (d) Rapid development in Manufacturing.
- Q.3. Which of the following was the major item of import during the decades of 1950's and 1960's?n
 - (a) Ores and Minerals
 - (b) Medicines
 - (c) Foodgrains
 - (d) Textiles
- Q.4. India aims to double its share in the international trade within the next five year. For this which suitable measure is adopted by it?
 - (a) Import Liberalisation
 - (b) Increase in import duties
 - (c) Strengthening the licensing process
 - (d) Levy of border security tax.
- Q.5. Fill in the blanks
 In case of the major ports______ decides the policy and plays regulatory functions . for the minor ports, policy and functions are regulated by _____.
- Q.6. Which of the following two important ports were snatched away from India due to portion in 1947?

- (a) Karachi and Kandla
- (b) Chittagong and Kolkata
- (c) Karachi and Chittagong
- (d) Chittagong and Haldi
- Q.7. Which of the following port is located at the head of gulf of Kuchh?
 - (a) MUMBAI
 - (b) JAWAHAR LAL NEHRU
 - (c) KANDLA
 - (d) MARMAGAO
- Q.8. Which of the following is not matched correctly?
 - (a) Mumbai Biggest port with natural harbor
 - (b) Marmagao Located on the entrance of zuari estuary
 - (c) Vishakapattnam land locked port
 - (d) Paradwip Queen of Arabian sea
- Q.9. Kandla port was developed to companstate the loss of which of the following port?
 - (a) Karachi
 - (b) Chittagong
 - (c) Diamond harbor
 - (d) Surat
- Q.10. Which of the following is not an international airport of india?
 - (a) Nagpur
 - (b) Patna
 - (c) Ranchi
 - (d) Bhubaneswar
- Q.11. Which of the following statement is not appropriate about the Kolkata port?
 - (a) It is situated at the bank of Hugli river.
 - (b) It was developed by the Britishers.
 - (c) It is confronting with the problem of silt accumulation.
 - (d) Jawahar Lal NehruPort serves it as a satellite port.

- Q.12. Which of the following port is developed to relive the pressure of Chennai port?
 - (a) Tuticorin
 - (b) Kochchi
 - (c) Paradwip
 - (d) Haldia

ANSWER KEY

- 1. (D), 2. (A), 3. (C), 4. (A)
- 5. (Central Govt., State Govt.)
- 6. (C), 7. (C), 8. (D), 9. (A), 10. (C), 11. (D), 12. (A)

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS : (3 MARKS QUESTIONS)

Q.13. Write down the chief features of International Trade of India? Ans.

- 1. India's international Trade always remains unfavorable.
- 2. The value of import continued to be higher than that of value of export.
- 3. India has trade relations with most of the countries and major trading blocks of the world.
- 4. Textiles ores and minerals, gems and jewelry and electronics good are the main items of export.
- 5. Petroleum is the major commodity of import in our country.

Q.14. Explain the meaning of 'Hinterland '- (CBSE2011,2016)

Ans.

- 1. The area served by the port is called its hinterland.
- 2. It is quite difficult to delimit the area of influence of any port because it is not stable.
- 3. In most of the cases, hinterland of one port may overlap the hinterland of another port.
- Q.15. There is decline in the export of traditional item in India ", Justify the statement by giving appropriate examples.

Ans.

1. There is a decline in the export of traditional items, such as Coffee,

- Cashew etc.
- 2. It is largely due to the tough international competition. Sri Lanka is our main competitor in this field.
- 3. India couldn't achieve a desired a level in terms of textile industries. China and other East Asian countries are our major competitors.

Q.16. Mumbai port is the biggest port of country . Explain Ans.

- 1. It is a natural harbor whish provide safe places for large ships in a deep water.
- 2. It is situated closer to the general routes from the countries of middle East, Mediterranean countries, North Africa, North America And Europe.
- 3. It is an important industrial and commercial centre of India.

Q.17. How to countries are benefitted by the international trade? Describe Ans.

- 1. In today's complex economy, no nation is self dependent in terms of availability of all kind of resources, In every country some resources are in excess of their needs and others are in deficit.
- 2. So each and every country do less import of the things of need and do export of more things. So that needs of all the countries could fulfill.
- 3. The economic prosperity of a nation greatly depends upon the international trade of that country.

Q.18. Ports are regarded as the "Gateway of international Trade". Explain Ans.

- 1. Sea port play an important role in the international trade, So they are called as gateway of India.
- 2. Ports provide the facilities of loading and unloading of goods and storage facilities for the ships.
- 3. Ports work as the collection points of goods for their hinterlands.
- Q.19. Many steps have been taken to increase the share in international trade by india. Explain any three measures.
- Ans. Pattern of India international trade has been changing continuously. There is

sharp rise in the worth of overses trade of India after Independence.

Following measures have been taken to increase its share in international trade.

- 1. Adoption of the policy of liberalization for the industries by the government of India.
- 2. Development of manufacturing units on large scale.
- 3. Diversification of market.
- Q.20. "Kolkata had the initial advantage of being the capital of British India . But now it has lost its significance considerably ". Explain the Statement

OF

Analyses the major problems confronted by the Kolkata Port.

Ans.

- 1. It is confronted with the problem of silt accumulation in the Hugli river which provides a link to the sea.
- 2. The diversion of exports to the other ports such as Vishakhapatnam, Paradwip and its satellite port Haldia.
- 3. Increase in congestion on this port.
- Q.21. Give the description of direction of trade in India.

- 1. An interesting development in the direction of India's trade is that the USA which was in first position in 2003-2004 has been relegated to the IIIrd position in 2010-2011.
- 2. In 2016-2017, the maximum share of international trade is with ASIA and ASEAN.
- 3. India has trade relation also with the countries of western Europe such as U.K, Belgium, Italy, France, Switzerland etc.
- 4. Canada, Russia, Asia and Africa Countries are also our trading Partner.
- 5. India's direction of trade is very less towards Africa according to 2016-2017
- Q.22. Study the following table and answer the question that follow.

Commadities	2009-10	2010-11	2015-16	2016-17
Agriculture and allied Products	10.0	9.9	12.6	12.3

2.	Ores and Minerals	4.9	4.0	1.6	1.9
3.	Manu- factured good	67.4	68.0	72.9	73.6
4.	Crude and Petroleum Products products	16.2	16.8	11.9	11.7
5.	Other Commun- ication	1.5	1.2	1.1	0.5

- 1. The Export of which commodity shows highest growth between 2000-2010 and 2017?
- A. Manufactured Goods.
- 2. Export of which commodity is showing the highest downfall between the years 2009-2010 and 2016 2017?
- A. Ores Minerals
- 3. Mention the reason responsible for the decline in export of agricultural products and traditional items?
- A. Tough International Competition

Q.23. Study the Following table and answer the question that follow

Commodity Group	2009-10	2010-11	2015-16	2016-17
Food and allied Products	3.7	2.9	5.1	5.6
2. Fuel (Coal,Pol)	33.2	31.3	25.4	26.7
3. Fertilizers	2.3	1.9	2.1	1.3

4. Paper board manufacturing and news print	0.5	0.6 0.8	0.9	
5. Capital goods	15.0	13.1	13.0	13.6
6. Other	42.6	47.7	38.1	37.0

1. Mention the causes responsible for the sharp rise in the import of petroleum and allied products.

Ans. Apart from fuel, it is also used in industries in the form of raw material.

2. Which is the least imported commodity between the years 2016-2017?

Ans. Paper board manufacturing and news print

3. Agriculturally India is a prosperous country, still India imports edible oils and pulses, Why?

Ans.

- 1. Indian Farmers are moving towards cash crops to get high income.
- 2. Increasing demand of these crops due to ever increasing population.
- Q.24. Analyses the changing pattern of import and export composition of india.

Ans. Changing Patterns of the composition of India's import—

- 1. In 1950's and 1960's, India was facing the problem of acute food shortage. So the food grains, capital goods, machinery, and equipment were the major items of import.
- 2. In 1970's, import of food grains was replaced by the import of fertilizer and petroleum.
- 3. Machine and equipment, special steel, edible oil and chemicals largely make the import basket.
- 4. There is sharp increase in the import of petroleum and allied products.
- 5. Value of import remain higher as compared to the value of export.

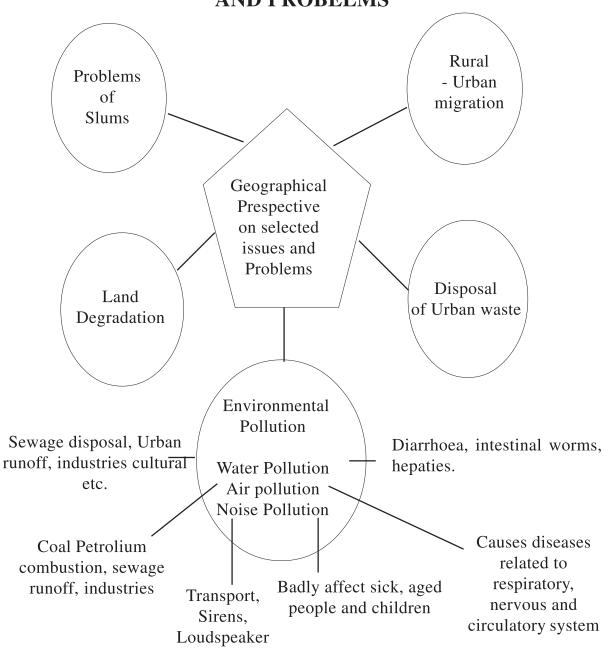
Changing Pattern of export's Composition

1. The decline in traditional items such as coffee, cashew etc.

- 2. An increase has been registered in floricultural products, fresh fruits, marine products and sugar etc.
- 3. Manufacturing sector alone accounted for 73.6% of India's total value of export in 2016-2017
- 4. Engineering goods have shown a significant growth in the export.
- 5. The shares of ore minerals and manufactured goods have largely remained constant over the years from 2010-2017

CHEPTER - 12

GEOGRAPHICAL PERSPECTIVE ON SELECTED ISSUES AND PROBELMS



MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS:

Q.1.	Which of the following states of India is not included for the development of "Ganga Gram" under the 'Namami Ganga' Program?a. Uttarakhand					
	b.	Uttar Pradesh				
	c.	Jharkhand				
	d.	Haryana				
Q.2.	Which of the following is a main cause of acid rain?					
	a.	Water Pollution				
	b.	Land Pollution				
	c.	Noise Pollution				
	d.	Air Pollution				
Q.3.	Fill in the blanks:-					
		Processes are actively participated in land degradation. These Processes and				
Q.4.	Which of the following statement is not true in the context of slums.					
	a.	These are the areas of the least choice.				
	b.	They have dilapidated house.				
	c.	They get clean environment.				
	d.	These areas are over crowded having narrow street pattern.				
Q.5.	Which of the following factors is not responsible for the migration of population from rural areas to urban areas?					
	a.	Clean environment of rural areas				
	b.	Less Opportunities of employment				
	c.	High demand of works in cities				
	d.	Uneven pattern of development between rural and urban areas.				

- Q.6. Which of the following is not consider as the main source of noise pollution?
 - a. Various industries
 - b. Mechanical construction
 - c. Auto mobiles and air crafts
 - d. Sewage runoff
- Q.7. Which of the following is not an example of solid waste?
 - a. Stained small pieces of metals
 - b. Broken glass ware
 - c. Polythene bags
 - d. Toxic effluents from industries
- Q.8. The only main road that traverses from Dharavi is Known as
 - a. Seventy Foot Road
 - b. Ninety Foot road
 - c. Hundred Foot Road
 - d. Eighty Foot Road
- Q.9. Which of the following is the main cause of poverty in Jhabua District?
 - a. Degradation of forests and land
 - b. Wind erosion
 - c. Indifference of government
 - d. Slow Urbanization
- Q.10. Which of the following is the most water polluting industries?
 - a. Food processing industry
 - b. Pulp and paper industry
 - c. Electro plating industry
 - d. Iron and steel industry
- Q.11. Consider the following statement and choose the correct answer with the help of given options:
 - 1. Most of the industrial wastes are disposed off in running water or lakes

2. Poisonous elements reach the reservoirs, rivers and other water bodies which destroy the bio-system of these waters.

Options:

- A. Only statement 1st is true
- B. Only statement 2nd is true
- C. Both statement are true and statement 2nd correctly explains the effects of statement
- D. Both statement are incorrect.
- Q.12. Which of the following pairs is not matched correctly

	Types of Pollution	Pollutants
a.	Air Pollution	Hydrocarbons
b.	Water Pollution	Oil and Grease
c.	Land Pollution	Radio Active substances
d.	Noise Pollution	Aldehydes Asbestos

- Q.13. Fertilizers induces an increase in the _____ Content of surface waters
 - a. Nitrate
 - b. Lead
 - c. Chloride
 - d. Radio active materials

Answer Key:

- 1.-(d), 2.-(d), 3. (Natural-Human Induced)
- 4.-(c), 5.-(a) 6.-(d) 7.-(d)
- 8.-(b), 9.-(a) 10.-(b),11.-(c),12.-(d),13.-(a)

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (3 MARKS)

- Q.14. Explain the major urban problems related to developing countries.
- Ans.
- 1. Problem of urban waste disposal
- 2. Problem of population explosion
- 3. Problem of slums (To be explain all 3 points)

- Q.15. Which cultural and religious activities are responsible for the pollution? Ans.
 - 1. Pilgrimages and religious activities
 - 2. Religious fairs
 - 3. Tourism
 - 4. Mountaineering and exploration mission
 - 5. Buring of dead bodies / or flowing in rivers
 - 6. Throwing out of religious waste of household or flowing through water
- Q.16. How the degraded land can be classified on the basis of process of land degradation? Give brief description about the each process.

Ans.

- 1. Land degradation due to human activates:- It includes excessive use of agricultural land, reckless cutting of forests, over grazing, over mining and constructional activities.
- 2. Land degradation due to natural factors: It includes gully erosion, water logging, erosion due to steep slope, landslides and avalanches etc.
- Q.17. Problem of increasing environment pollution in modern times is becoming serious not only for present generation but also for future generation. Explain
- Ans. Environmental pollution became a serious problem for human beings in modern times. Natural environment is affecting gradually due to this pollution. All the spheres are affecting, with the development of industries in rural and urban areas, situation is becoming more alarming. Many kinds of impurities are added in the environment which not only affecting present generation but also becoming serious for future generation. Due to environmental pollution the health of our future or our children will be affected. Many serious diseases are emerging and ultimately the future of children is under threat.
- Q.18. What is air pollution? What are its main sources? How the air pollution affected the human health?

Or

Why air pollution is a serious problem in India?

Or

Write the definition of 'AirPollution'. Explain any two bad effects of air pollution.

Ans. Dust, Smoke poisonous gases, fog, odour or Vapour to the air in substantial proportional and duration that may be harmful to flora and fauna is called as air pollution.

Sources of air Pollution- Combustion of fossil fules, Mining, industrial Processes, Solid waste disposal etc. are the main sources oxides of sulphur and nitrogen, hydrocarbons, carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, lead and asbestos.

Effects on health:

- 1. It causes various diseases related to respiratory, nervous and circulatory systems.
- 2. Smoky fog over cities called as urban smog is harmful ti human and health. It also can cause air pollution
- Q.19. The Bhils in petlawad block, through their own efforts, have revitalized large parts of common property resources", Explain by giving three appropriate examples.

Ans.

- 1. Each household planted and maintained one tree on the common property resources.
- 2. They also have planted fodder grass on the pasture land and adopted social fencing of these lands for atleast two years.
- 3. Then they decided, there would be no open grazing on these lands, but stall feeding of cattle.
- Q.20. In India, there is a high tendency of migration from rural areas to urban areas. Explain the cause responsible for it.

- 1. High demand for labour in urban areas always exists. Because of that in the want of regular and good emoluments people move towards cities.
- 2. Better health and medical facilities found in urban places as compared to rural areas.
- 3. Social discrimination and cast conflicts with poor and land less laborers leads to the migration of these people from rural areas to urban areas.

Q.21. Urban centers in India are more differentiated in terms of the socio-economic politico cultural and other indicators of development than any other areas. Explain

Ans.

- 1. At the top there are farm houses and high income group localities characterized by well developed urban infrastructures like wide roads, street lights, water and sanitation facilities, lawns Green belts, Parks, Play ground and provisions for individual security and right to privacy.
- 2. At the other extreme of it are the "slums; 'Jhuggi- Jhopdi" clusters and colonies of shanty structures. These are environmentally incompatible and degraded areas.
- 3. Among the cities of India, Some Villages are found in the semi urban characteristics. Neither they are full fledge village not is having the basic characteristics of cities. Here landlords and the people owing old properties ere residing as well as the people with their families living in single room on rent also found.
- Q.22. Though water pollution are also created from natural sources but the pollutants from human sources are the causes of concern. Why?

Ans.

- 1. Human beings pollute the water through industries, agricultural, and cultural activities.
- 2. Industrial wastes, poisonous gases, chemical, residuals, numerous, heavy metals are discharged into water without treatment.
- 3. Modern techniques of agriculture, chemical fertilizers pesticides etc. are also pollution generating components.
- 4. Cultural activities such as pilgrimage, religious fairs, tourism etc. also cause water pollution.
- Q.23. "Urban solid waste disposal is a serious problem in India". Explain any three causes.

- 1. Rapid increase in population, inadequate facilities and significant waste generation from the different sources.
- 2. The huge turnout of ashes and debris from industries, thermal power houses and building constructions or demolitions.

- 3. No complete disposal of waste/garbage. If left uncollected.
- 4. Lack of proper dumping sites.
- 5. No recycling of waste due to unawareness of people.
- Q.24. How the industsies are responsible for polluting water bodies like rivers, reservoirs, lakes etc. Explain with examples.

Ans.

- (i) Industries produce several urdesirable products including wastes, polluted waste water, poisonous gases, chemical residuals, heavy metals dust, somke etc.
- (ii) Most of the industrial wastes are disposed off in running water or lake consequently poisonous elements reach the reservoirs, which destroy the bio-system of these waters.
- (iii) Major water polluting industries are leather, pulp and paper, textiles and chemicals.

LONG ANSWER QUESTION(5 MARKS QUESTION)

Q.25. Give description about the problem of land degradation.

Ans. Following are the causes-

- (i) Over irrigation-Due to it salinity and alkalinity have increased in the northern plains.
- (ii) Industrial wastes- Industrial waste pollute the water, wher this water is used in other agricultural properties of soil get affected.
- (iii) Urban waste sewage disposal,urban run off, and garbage is also an active cause of land degradation. when sewage run off, urban wastes and poisonous chemicals come in to contact with the soil of a region, then they start to pollute it, gradually land degradation takes place.
- (iv) Acid rain- Sulfhur dioxide, released from the factories is the cause of acid rain. It increases alkalinity in the soil. Pollutant in large quantity released from the coalmines, venicles and thermal power plants pollute the soil and air.
- (v) Mining Activities- mining specially open cast mining is an important cause of land degradation.
- Q.26. What are the problems of slums in India? Explain

- (i) Slums are inhabited by those people who were forced to migrate from the rural areas to the urban centres in search of livelihood
- (ii) They are environmentally all incompatible and degraded area.
- (iii) Slums are developed illegaliy along railway lines, roads, park and in other abondoned land.
- (iv) Slums are the residential areas of the least choice, dilapidated houses, poor hygienic conditions poor vantilation, lack of basic amenities, light and toilet facilities etc.
- (v) Most of the slum population works in low paid jobs so they have low standard.
- (vi) They are undernourished, prone to different types of diseases and illness.
- (vii) The poverty makes them vulnerable to drug abuse, alcohalism, crime etc.
- (viii) Lack of health facilities.
- Q.27. Explain the measures helpful in controlling or reducing land degradation. Ans.
 - (i) Farmess should use chemical ferti lisess in contralled quantity.
 - (ii) Urban or industrial run off waste water shuld be reuse after treatment and recycliug.
 - (iii) Degraded vegetables, fruits, human and animal waste should be convested in bio fertilisess by adopting appropriate technlogy.
 - (iv) Ban on plastic goods.
 - (v) Gaubage should be thrown over marked places so that it can be disposed off properly.
 - (vi) Tree plantation should be increased.

Source Based Questions

From Both Books

Source Based Question

I

Read the following paragraph attentively and answer any three questions given

The Naturalisation of Humans

Benda lives in the wilds of the abujh Masd area fo central India. His village consists of three huts deep in the wilds. Not even birds or stray dogs that usually crowd villages can be seen in these areas. Wearing a small loin cloth amed with his axe he slowly surveys the penda (forest) where his tribe practices a primitive form of agriculture called shifting cultivation. Benda and his friends burn small patches of forest to clear them for cultivation. The ash is used for making the soil fertile. Benda is happy that the. Mahua trees around him are in bloom. How lucky I am to be a part of this beautiful universe, he thinks as he looks up to see the Mahua, palash and sal trees that have sheltered him since childhood. Crossing the penda in a gliding motion, Benda makes his way to a stream. As he bends down to scoop up a palmful of water, he remembers to thank Loi-Lugi, the spirit of the forest for allowing him to quench his thirst. Moving on with his friends, Benda chews on succulent leaves and roots. The boys have been trying to collect Gajjhara and kuchla, from the forest. These are apecial plants that Banda and his people use. He hopes the spirits of the forest will he kind and lean him to these herbs. These are needed to barter in the madhai or tribal fair coming up the next full moon. He closes his eyes and tries hard to racall what the elders had taught him about there heuks and the places they are found in. He wishes he can listen more carefully. Suddenly there is a rustling or leaves. Benda and his firends know it is the outsiders who have come searching for them in the wilds. In a sinle fluid motion Benda and his friends disappear behind the thick oanopy of frees and become one with the spirit of the forest.

- Q.1. Identify the type of agriculture practiced by the tribes of Abujhmad area.
 - a. Shifting Agriculture
 - b. Intensine subsistence agriculture

- c. Plantation agriculture
- d. Miked agriculture
- Q.2. Benda and his tribe is completely dependent upon nature. It shous the concept of the which school of thought?
 - a. Possibilism
 - b. Determinism
 - c. New determinism
 - d. Humanism.
- Q.3. Which of the following statement is not true about benda and his tribal group?
 - a. Benda's tribe worship nature.
 - b. His livelihood depends upon gathering and shifting agriculture.
 - c. Their knowledge about technolodgy is very low
 - d. They meet and communicate with people and learn new practices.
- Q.4. Study the text given and conclude which behaviour is not being doue by Benda
 - a. He becomes sad ofter seeing the flowering mahua trees.
 - b. He pays thanks to forest god loi lugi after quenching his thirst.
 - c. He collects medicinal plants for purnima fair
 - d. He chews leaves and shoots while walking in the jungle.

Answer.

1.a, 2.b, 3.d, 4.a

П

Read the text given below and auewer any three Duestions that follow.

Winters in the town of Trondheim mean fierce winds and heavy snow. The skies are dark for months. Kari drives to wark in the dark at 8 am. She has special tyres for the winter and keeps the headlights of her office is artificially heated at a comtortable 23 degrees celsius. The campus of the university she works in is built under a huge glass dome. This dome keeps the snow out in winter and lets in the sunshine in the summer. The temperature is controlled carefully and there is adequate lighting. Even though fresh vegetables and plants don't grow in such harsh weather, kari keeps an orchid on her desk and enjoys eating tropical fruits like banana and kiwi. These are flown in from

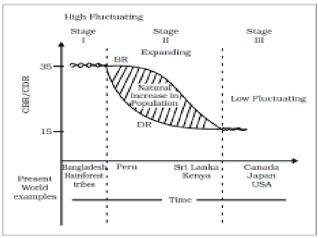
warmer areas regularly. With a click of the mouse, kari can network with colleagues in New Delhi. She frequently takes a morning fight to Londan and returns in the evening in time to watch her favourite television serial. Though kari is fifty eight years old, she is fitter and looks younger than many thrty year olds in other parts of the world.

- (i) Which of the geographical thought is expressed in above paragraph
 - a. Humanisation of Nature
 - b. Naturalisation of human
 - c. Neo Determinism
 - d. Spatial organisation
- (ii) Trandhiem is very cold and sun does not appear for many days, yet tropical fruits and other facilities are evailable there. Which of the following factors owe for this
 - a. Development of technology.
 - b. Development Agriculture
 - c. One's will power
 - d. Efforts of Government.
- (iii) The compus of university in which kari works is built under a huge glass dome. why?
 - a. Because it keeps them safe from coldwinds
 - b. It keeps the snow out in winters
 - c. It controls the temperature in university
 - d. All the above are true
- (iv) What does above said text want to convey to readers?
 - a. About extreme cold weather of trondheim
 - b. About the large dome of university
 - c. Limitation of man in front of nature
 - d. Human's adaptation with extreme climatice conditions with help of technology.

Answer.

(i)-b, (ii)-a, (iii)-d, (iv)-d.

Read and observe the following diagram attentively and answer the questions that follow.



Demographic Transittion Theory

Choose the right answer.

- (i) According to graph what is the reason of natural growth in population?
 - a. Birth rate-death rate
 - b. Death rate-Birth rate
 - c. Growth rate-Birth rate
 - d. Birth rate-Migration
- (ii) Iransition form high fluctuating stage to low fluctuating stage shows:.
 - a. Progression from rural agrarian economy to urban industrial economy.
 - b. Progression from urban industrial economy to rural agrarian economy
 - c. From low birth rate and low death rate to high birth rate and high death rate.
 - d. Migration from urban areas to rural areas
- (iii) According to graph, which of the following statement is true in reference of developing countries:
 - a. High birth rate and high death rate
 - b. Low birth rate and Low death rate
 - c. High birth rate and Low death rate

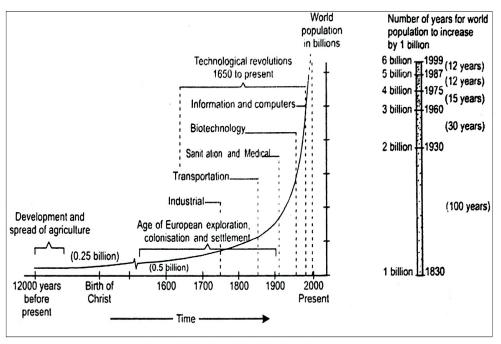
- d. Low birth rate and high death rate
- (iv) In which stage of Demographic transition population explosion occured?
 - a. First stage
 - b. Second stage
 - c. Third stage
 - d. Second part of third stage.

Answer.

(i).a (ii).a (iii).c (iv). b

IV

Read the following diagram carefully and answer the queation that follow



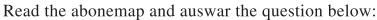
Resource, Technology and Population Growth

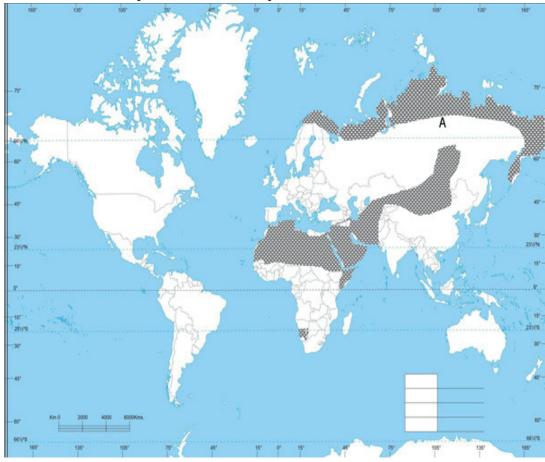
(i) In which of the following period of time did population doubled it self very rapially

- a. 1830-2011
- b. 1830-1930
- c. 1930-1987
- d. 1960-2011
- (ii) Which of the following factor was effective before 14000 years ago from today for population growth
 - a. Development of transportation
 - b. Technological revolution
 - c. Development and spread of agriculture
 - d. Rapid growth in population
- (iii) Between 1975 and 1999 population doubling time decreased at record level. Which of the following factors is responsible mainly for it.
 - a. Progress in Biotechonlogy
 - b. Industrial revolution
 - c. Development in transport system
 - d. Development in agriculture
- (iv) How much time it took to grow population from 2 billion to 6 billion
 - a. 60 years
 - b. 65 years
 - c. 100 years
 - d. 69 years

Answer.

(i)-b, (ii)-c, (iii)-a, (iv)-d.





- (i). Which type of economic activity is shown in the shaded area of world map?
 - a. commercial livestock rearing
 - b. Nomadic Herding
 - c. Hunting and gathering
 - d. Subsistence agriculture.
- (ii). In the above map which of the following region is shown by 'A' a. Sahara
 - b. South west Africa
 - c. Mangolia
 - d. Tundra Region of Eurasia

- (ii). Which of the following community/communities in India is/are involved in the economic activity popular in shaded area of the map.
 - a. Gujjar
 - b. Bakarwals
 - c. Gaddis
 - d. All of above
- (iv). What is/are the reason/s for decreasing and shrinking of the areas of this economic activity
 - a. Imposition of ecomomic activity
 - b. New settlement plans by different countries
 - c. Land acquisiton by Governments
 - d. All of the above.

ANSWER

i)-b, ii)-d, iii)-d, iv-d

VI

Case Study

A case study

Jhabua district is located in the westernmost agro.climatic zone in Madhya Pradesh. It is, in fact, one of the five most backward districts of the country. It is characterised by high concentration of tribal population (mostly Bhils). The people suffer due to poverty which has been accentuated by the high rate of resource degradation, both forest and land. The watershed management programmes funded by both the ministries of "Rural Development" and "Agriculture". Government of India, have been successfully implemented in jhabua district which has gone a long way in preventing land degradation and improving soil quality. Watershed Management programmes acknowledge the linkage between land, water and vegetation and attempts to improve livlihoods of people through natural resource management and community participation. In the past five years, the programmes funded by the Ministry of Rural Development alone (implenented by Rajiv Gandhi Mission for watershed Management) has treated 20 per cent of the total area under Jhabua district.

The petlawad block of Jhabua is located in the northernmost part of the district and represents an interesting and successful case of Government NGO partnership and communty participation in managing watershed programmes. The Bhils in petlawad block are example. (Sat Rundi hamlet of karravat village through their own efforts, have revitalised large parts of common property resources. Each househlod planted and maintnined one tree in the common property. They also have planted fodder grass on the pastur land and adopted social. fencing of these lands for at least two years. Even after that, they say, there would be no open grazing on these lands, but stall feeding of cattle, and they are thus confident that the pastures they have developed would sustain their cattle in future.

An interesting aspect of this experience is that before the community embarked upon the process of management of the pasture, there was encroachment on this land by a villager from an adjoining village. The villagers called the tehsildar to ascertain the rights of the common land. The ensuing conflict was tackled by the villagers by offering to make the defaulter encroaching on the .. CPR a member of their user group and sharing the benefits of greening the common land/pastures. (See the section on CPR in chapter 'land Resources and Agriculture').

Read the above case study and answer the following questions.

- (i) What is the main reason of poverty in Jhabua district
 - a. Lack of empolyment opportunities.
 - b. High rate of degradation of land and forest resoures.
 - c. Apathy of Government.
 - d. Lack of awareners among people.
- (ii). How does potlawad block of Jhabua district present an example of community co-operation.
 - a. Revitalisation of common property resources.
 - b. Planting and miantaining a plant by every family
 - c. planting fodder grass on the pasture.
 - d. All of above.
- (iii). Which among the following qrganisation has treated 20% of the total area under jhabhu district by implementing water sheel Manglment.

- a. Rajiv Gandhi Mission.
- b. Rural Development.
- c. Agriculturs Ministry.
- d. Hariyali project.
- (iv). Which of the following tribes is concentrated in jhabhu District.?
 - a. Santhali
 - b. Gaund
 - c. Bhil
 - d. Gujjar

ANSWER.

1. b, 2. d, 3. a, 4. b

VII

A case study

Ramesh has been working in contract 95a welder on construction site in Telcher(cool region of Odisha) for the last two year. He moved with the contractor to various place s like Surat, Mumbai, Gandhi Nagar, Bihar,Jamnagar and so on. He remits RS.20.000 per year to his father in his native village. The remittances have been mainly usad for daily consumption, healthcare, schooling of children, etc. The standard of living Ramesh;s family improved significantly.

Fifteen years ago, the situation was passing through very tough times. Three of his brothers and there families had to survive on three acres of land The family was highly in debt. Ramesh had to discontinue his studies after ninth standard. He was further hard pressed when he got mamied.

Simultaneously, he was also impressed by some successful out.migrants of his village who had been working in Ludhiana and supporting their families in village by sending money and some consumer goods. Thus, due to abject poverty in the family and perceived job promises friend. He worked there in a woolen factory for six months at the rate of only RS 20 per day in 1988, Apart from the crsis of managing his personal expenditure from this meagre income, he was also facing difficulty in assimilation to the new culture and environment.

Then he decided to change his place of work from ludhiana to surat under the guidence of his feriend. He learnt the skills of welding in Surat and after that he has been moving different places with the same contractor. Through the economic condition of Ramesh's family at village improved, he is bearing the pain of separation of his near and dear ones. He cannot shift them with him, as the job is temporary and transferable.

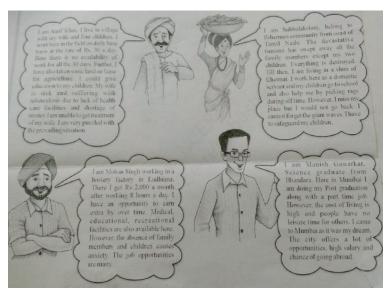
- (i). Which of the following reasons is responsible for emigration of Ramesh from Village?
 - a. Less opportunity of employement and no availability of agriculture land.
 - b. Ill health of father.
 - c. Child education
 - d. Unavailability of health services in village.
- (ii). Which type of problem was faced by Ramesh in Ludhiana
 - a. Adoptation with new culture and environment.
 - b. Increased cost of rent
 - c. Seperation from family.
- (iii). Why did Ramesh left ludhiana for Surat?
 - a. He did not like Ludhiana
 - b. His family was in surat
 - c. He realised that surat has same better opportunies
 - d. The climate of surat was good.
- (iv). What was the consequence of migration done by ramesh.
 - a. Ramesh made property in the city.
 - b. Ramesh lived a lavish life in the city.
 - c. Ramesh sent money order to his village and his family's condition improved.
 - d. Ramesh's family become poorer.

Answer key.

1.a, 2.d, 3.c, 4.c

VIII

Read the following description and ansures the Question.



- (i). Which of the following statement is true?
 - a. Mohan singh is engaged in primary activities and Arifkhan in secondary activity.
 - b. Subbulaxmi and Manish Gawarkar are working in tertiary activities.
 - c. Mohan and Arif both are involved in primary activities
 - d. Manish Gavarkar is in quinary activity.
- (ii). According to Arif khan, he is puzzled with the prevailing situation of his village. These may be called as:
 - a. Pull factor of Migration.
 - b. Push factor of Migration.
 - c. Natural factor.
 - d. Physical factor.
- (iii). All the facilities and opportunilies are available in ludhiana even then Mohan singh feels anxiety why?
 - a. Overtime work.
 - b. Lack of healthcare facileties.
 - c. Absence of family members is Ludhianr.
 - d. Limited opportunity of employment.
- (iv). Which of the following reasons compelled subbulaxmi to migrate.
 - a. Lack of health services.

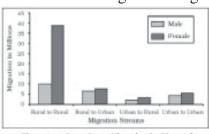
- b. Education facilities.
- c. Natural disaster.
- d. More opportunities.

ANSWER.

(i)-b, (ii)-b, (iii)-c, (iv)-c

IX

Read the bar diagram and give the Answer of Questions.



Male Pemale

Rand to Rand to Coton Ubbas to Rand Urban to Coton Migration Streams

Fig. 1 a : Intra State Migration by Place of Last Residence Indicating Migration Streams (Duration 0-9 years), India, 2001

Fig. 1 b : Inter State Migration by Place of Last Residence Indicating Migration Streams (Duration 0-9 years), India, 2001

Source: Census of India, 2001

- (i). In intrastate migration, who is dominating?
 - a. Female
 - b. Male
 - c. Both
 - d. None of these
- (ii). In intra state migration, what is the reason of female dominance.
 - a. Education
 - b. Marriage
 - c. Employment
 - d. Better living condition
- (iii). What is the main reason of male migration?
 - a. To earn livelihood
 - b. Tourism
 - c. Marriage
 - d. None of above
- (iv). Which stream of migration is male dominant in inter state migration.

- a. Rural to Rural
- b. Rural to urban
- c. Urban to Rural
- d. Urban to urban

ANSWER KEY.

(i).a, (ii).b, (iii).a, (iv).b

X

Watershed Development in Ralegan siddhi, Ahmadangar, Maharashtra: A Case Study

Ralegan Siddhi is a small village in the district of Ahmadnagar. Maharashtra. It has become an example for watershed development throughout the country.

In 1975, this village was caught in a web of poverty and illicit liquor trade. The transformation took place when a retired army personnel, settled down in the village and took up the task of watershed development. He convinced villagers about the importance of family planning and voluntary labour; preventing open grazing, felling trees, and liquor prohibition.

Voluntary labour was necessary to ensure minimum dependence on the government for financial aids. "It socialised the costs of the projects." Explained the activist. Even those who were working outside the village contributed to the development by committing a month's salary every year.

Work began with the percolation tank constructed in the village. In 1975, the tank could not hold water. The embankment wall leaked. People voluntarily repaired the embankment. The seven wells below it swelled with water in summer for the first time in the living memory of the people. The people reposed their faith in him and his visions.

A youth group called Tarun Mandal was formed. The group worked to ban the dowry system, caste discrimination and untouchability. Liquar distilling units were removed and prohibition imposed. Open guazign was completely banned with a new emphasis on stall.feeding. The cultivation of water intensive crops like sugarcane was banned. Crops such as pulses, oilseeds and certain cash crops with low water requirements were encouraged.

All elections to local bodies began to be held on the basis of concensees. "It made the community leaders complete representatives of the people." A system of Nyay Panchayats (informal courts) were also set up. Since then, no case has been referred to the police.

Rs. 22 lakh school building was constructed using only the resources of the village. No donations were taken. Money was borrowed and paid back.



the villagers took pride in this self.reliance. A new system of sharing iabour grew out of this infusion of pride and voluntary spirit. People volunteered to help each other in agricultural operation. Landless labourers also gained employment. Today the village plans to buy land for them in adjoining villages.



Ralegan Siddhi after mitigation approach

At present. water is adequate; agriculture is flourishing, though the use of fertilisers and pesticides is very high. The prosperity also brings the question of obility of the present generation to carry on the work after the leader of the movemant who declared that. The process of Ralegan's evolution to an ideal village will not stop. With changing times, people tend to evolve new ways. In future, Ralegan might present a different model to the country."

- (i). Ralegan sidhi village become an example through out the country for____
 - a. Water shed development programme
 - b. Good facility of fransport
 - c. People's participation in army
 - d. Harvesting of sugarcane

- (ii). Which of the following is called as cash crop
 - a. Cotton
 - b. Sugarcane
 - c. Jute
 - d. All of the above
- (iii). How was Ralegan sidhi benefitted with watershed development programme?
 - a. People's income increased
 - b. Level of Groundwaler in creased
 - c. Village become attractive
 - d. None of the above
- (iv). What did tarun Mandal do in the village?
 - a. Community marriages
 - b. Free food distributi on
 - c. Development banned dowry system.
 - d. Building of wells.

ANSKEY.

(i).a, (ii).d, (iii).b, (iv).c

XI

Composition of India's export 2009-17

2009-10	2010-11	2015-16	2016-17
10.0	9.9	12.6	12.3
4.9	4.0	1.6	1.9
67.4	68.0	72.9	73.6
16.2	16.8	11.9	11.7
1.5	1.2	1.1	0.5
	10.0 4.9 67.4 16.2	10.0 9.9 4.9 4.0 67.4 68.0 16.2 16.8	10.0 9.9 12.6 4.9 4.0 1.6 67.4 68.0 72.9 16.2 16.8 11.9

Read the above table and answer the questions

- 1. The export of which commodity is decreasing continuously?
 - a. Manufactured goods
 - b. Agriculture and allied product.
 - c. Ore and minerals
 - d. None of there

- 2. Which commodity was exported more then other commodities in the year 2016
 - a. Manufactured goods
 - b. Agriculture and allied products
 - c. Petroleum and crude products
 - d. Ore and minerals
- 3. In the period of 2009to 2017 export of which commodity is continiously increasing
 - a. Petroleum and crude products.
 - b. Manufactured goods
 - c. Agriculture and allied products
 - d. Other commodities.
- 4. In which year percentage of export of Ore and minerals was minimum than other years.
 - a. 2009-10
 - b. 2010-11
 - c. 2015-16
 - d. 2016-17

ANSKEY

1.c, 2.a, 3.b, 4.c

XII
India: Compasition of Import 2009-17

(In percentage)

Commodity Group	2009.10	2010.11	2015.16	2016.17
Food and allied products	3.7	2.9	5.1	5.6
Fuel (Coal, POL)	33.2	31.3	25.4	26.7
Fertilisers	2.3	1.9	2.1	1.3
Paper board manufacturing				
and news print	0.5	0.6	0.8	0.9
Capitial goods	15.0	13.1	13.0	13.6
Others	42.6	47.7	38.1	37.8

Source: Economic survey 2016-17

- 1. Import percentage of which commodity is more than other commodities?
 - a. Food and related items
 - b. Fuel (coal and POL)
 - c. Fertilizers
 - d. Capital goods
- 2. Import of which commodity is less than other commodities?
 - a. Paper board manufactured and newsprint
 - b. Fertilizers
 - c. Capital goods
 - d. Fuel items
- 3. Which of the commodities are given in table have been placed second in 2015-16
 - a. Paper board manufactured and news print
 - b. Fertilizers
 - c. Capital goods
 - d. Fuel
- 4. According to the table import of which commodity is decreasing continuously.
 - a. Food and related items
 - b. Fuel (coal and PDL)
 - c. Fertilizers
 - d. Copital goods

ANSWER.

1-b, 2-a, 3-c, 4-c

XIII

History of Indian Airlines

1911 - Air transport in India was launched between Allahabad and Naini.

1947 – Air transport was provided by four major companies namely Indian National Airways, Tata Sons Limited, Air Services of India and Deccan Airways.

1951 - Four more companies joined the services, Bharat Airways, Himalayan Aviation Limited, Airways India and Kalinga Airlines.

1953 – Air transport was nationalised and two Corporations, Air India International and Indian Airlines were formed. Now Indian Airlines is known as 'Indian'.



Read the above text and answer the following questions:

- 1. Between which of two places did Air transpost start first?
 - a. Naini and Lucknow
 - b. Allahbad and Naini
 - c. Lucknow and Allahabad
 - d. Allahabad and kanpur
- 2. Which of the following transport company was not in existence in 1947?
 - a. Indian National Airways
 - b. Tata sons Limited
 - c. Jet Airways
 - d. Deccan Airways
- 3. When was Air transport nationalised?
 - a. 1953
 - b. 1954
 - c. 1943
 - d. 1945
- 4. Which of the following company was not included in 1951 in Air transport service?

- a. Kalinga Airlines
- b. Himalayan Aviation Ltd.
- c. Airways India
- d. Tata sons Ltd.

ANSWER KEY.

1.b, 2.c, 3.a, 4.d

XIV

Case Study: A Role Model to Restore the Ecology and Safeguard Human Health in Daurala

Based on the universal law "Polluter pays", effort to restore the ecology and safeguard the human health with people's participation has taken place in Dauala near Meerut. These efforts are now bearing fruits after a span of three years when Meerut based NGO had developed a model for ecological restoration. The meeting of the Daurala Industries officials, NGOs, Government officials and other stakeholders at Meerut has brought out results. The powerful logics, authentic studies and the pressure of people have brought a new lease of life to the twelve thousand residents of this village. It was in the year 2003 that the pitiable condition of Dauralaites drew the attention of the civil society. The groundwater of this village was contaminated with heavy metals. The reason was that the untreated wastewater of Daurala industries was lenching to the groundwater table. The organisation, the village community and people's representatives sat together to find out sustainable solutions to the health problem. The industrialists showed a keen interest towards checking the deteriorating ecology. The overhead water tank's capacity in the village was enhanced and a 900m extra pipeline was laid to supply potable water to the community. The silted pond of the village was cleaned and recharged by desiting it. Large quantity of silt was removed paving way to large quantity of water so that it recharged the aquifers. Rainwater harvesting structures have been constructed at different places which has helped in diluting the contaminants of the groundwater after the monsoons. 1000 trees have also been planted which have improved the environment.

Read the above paragraph and answer the questions (any 3)

- 1. What is the main reason of pollution of ground water in Daurala?
 - a. Sewage and waste water produced in Meerut city.
 - b. The untreated waste water of Daurala Industries leaching to the ground water table
 - c. Insecticides and pesticides used in farming
 - d. Solid waste from Sugarc industery
- 2. Which of the following steps were not included to make safe drinking waler available in Daurala
 - a. Increasing the capacity of over head tanks
 - b. The silted pond of the village was cleand and recharged by desilting it
 - c. Rain water harvesting system was constructed
 - d. Cleaning of ground water and chlorination
- 3. Who were the people or organisation taken active participation to restore ecology of Daurala
 - a. Civil Society
 - b. Industrialists
 - c. NGOs
 - d. All of the above
- 4. What does 'Polluter pays' means?
 - a. One who pollutes suffers with ill health, bad economy, unhealthy environments etc.
 - b. One who pollutes pays money to polluted area
 - c. One who is effected with pollution gets money
 - d. None of above

ANSWER KEY.

1.b, 2.d, 3.d, 4.a

XV

This region lies between 32°11' N and 32°41' N latitudes and 76°22' E and 76°53' E longitudes. Spread over an area of about 1,818 sq km, the region mostly lies between 1,500 m to 3,700 m Above the mean sea level. This region

popularly known as the homeland of Gaddis is surrounde by lofty mountains on all sides. It has pir Panjal in the north and Dhaula Dhar in the south. In the east, the extension of Dhaula Dhar converges with pir Panjal near Rohtang pass. The river Ravi and its tributaries.the Budhil and the Tundahen, drain this territory, and carve out deep gorges. These rivers divide the region into four physiographic divisions called Holi, Khani, Kugti and Tundah areas, Bharmaur experiences freezing weather conditions and snowfall in winter. Its mean monthly temperature in January remains 4 C and in July 26 C.

4	XX 71 ' 1	•	•	1 11 1	•	1	1
	11/h10h	ragion	10	dagarihad	110	Oborro	norogranh
1.	VV IIICII	1691011	18	described		anove	paragraph.

- a. Rayalseema
- b. Bharmaur
- c. Gaddis
- d. Pirpanjal

2.	river	drains	this	territory

- a. Kosi
- b. Dhauladhar
- c. Ravi
- d. Satluj
- 3. Which of the following statement is not true about the above described region.
 - a. It has harsh climate
 - b. It is one of the most economically and socially backward area.
 - c. This region is a plain physiographic region
 - d. It has low resource base
- 4. This region is home land of____tribes?
 - a. Santhals
 - b. Bhiles
 - c. Gaddis
 - d. kugti

ANSKEY.

1.b, 2.c, 3.c, 4.c

XVI

Read the following and answer the questions that follow:

National Highways Development projects

NHAI has taken up some major projects in the country under different phases :

Golden Quadrilateral: It comprises construction of 5,846.km long 4/6 lane, high density traffic corridor, to connect India's four big metro cities of Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, Kolkata. With the construction of Golden Quadrilateral, the time, distance and cost of movement among the mega cities of India will be considerably minimised.

North-South and East.West Corridors:

North-South corridor aims at connecting Srinagar in Jammu and Kashmir whth Kanniyakumari in Tamil Nadu (including Kochchi.Salem Spur) with 4,076.km long road. The East.West Corridor has been planned to Porbandar in Gujarat with 3,640.km of road length.

- 1. Which of the following organisations take responsibility of constructing Expressways and Highways in India?
 - a. NHAI
 - b. CPWD
 - c. PWD
 - d. Dist. councils.
- 2. Which of the following group of cities is beneficiany of Goldan Qudrilatieral project
 - a. Delhi.Amritsar, Mumbai, Kolkata
 - b. Delhi, chandigarh, chennai, Kolkata
 - c. Delhi, MUmbai, Kolkata, Chennai
 - d. Delhi, Bengaluru, Mumbai, Kolkata
- 3. East-west corridor connects----
 - a. Ahemdabad and Silcher
 - b. Porbandar and Silcher

- c. Porbandar and Imphal
- d. Jamnagar and silcher
- 4. What was the aim and objective fo golden Quadrilateral project?
 - a. Minimisation of time-dislance and cost of movement.
 - b. To increase Road density.
 - c. To accelerate the speed of vehicles.
 - d. To increase the numbers of vehicles.

ANSWER KEY.

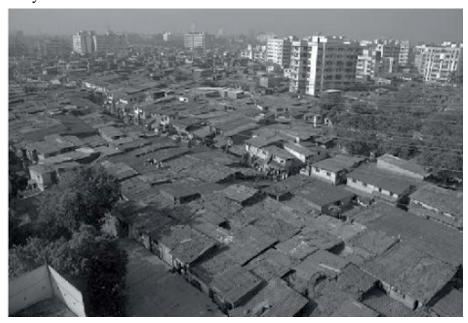
1-a, 2-c, 3-b, 4-a

Read the following report and answer the questions that follow.

Dharavi-Asia's Largest Slum

Buses merely skirt the periphary. Authorickshaws cannot go there. Dharavi is part of centeral Bombay where three wheelers are banned.

Only one main road traverses to slum, and is called 'ninety-foot road' which has been reduced to less than half of that for most of its length. Some of the side alleys and lanes are so narrow that not



even a bicycle can pass. The whole neighbourhood consists of temporary buildings, two or three storeyed high-with pusty iron stairways to the upper part. where a single room is rented by a whole family, sometimes accommodating twelve or more people; it is a kind of tropical version of the industrial dwelling of victorian Londan's East End.

But Dharavi is a keeper of more sombre secrets than the revulsion it inspires in the rich; a revulsion, morever, that is in direct proportion to the role it serves in the creation of the wealth of Bombay. In this place of shadowless, treeless sunilght, uncollected garbage, stagnant poots of foul water, where the only nor-numan creafures are the shinnig black crows and long grey rats, some of the most beautiful, valuble and useful articles in India are made. From Dharavi come delicate ceramics and pottery, excuisite embroidery and zari work, sophisticated leather goods, high-fashion garments finely-wrought metalwork, delicate jewellery settings, wood carvings and furniture that would find its way into the richest houses, both in India and abroad.

Dharavi was an arm of the sea, that was filled by waste, largely produced by the people who have come to live there. Scheduled Castes and poor Muslims. It comprises rambling buildings of corrugated metal, 20 metres high in places, used for the treatment of hides and tanning. There are pleasant (seabook, 1996 pp. 50,51-52)

- 1. Why is Dharavi called slum?
 - a. Because it has no big houses.
 - b. Because leather goods are made here
 - c. Because there is no proper arrangement of collecting waste, sewage system and other infrastructure
 - d. Because many poor people live here
- 2. Why Autorickshaws or three wheelers are banned in Dharavi?
 - a. Roads and lanes are very narrow
 - b. Residents of Dharavi can not offord fare
 - c. These are banned because these causes pollution
 - d. None of above
- 3. Which of the following does not relate to Dharavi?
 - a. It has its role in creating wealth of Mumbai.
 - b. It has proper sunlight on its street and houses

- c. Many industries like pottery, high fashion garment etc are here
- d. Dharavi was earlier an arm of the sea which was filled by waste
- 4. Why is ninety foot road said as miscalled?
 - a. It was never as wide as ninety-foot
 - b. It is only road traverses the slum
 - c. people don't like to call this name
 - d. Noe it has been reduced to less than half due to encroachment

ANSWER

1-c, 2-a, 3-b, 4-a.

Practice Question Paper

Geography (Theory)

Session-(2021-2022)

Time Allotted - 3 Hours

Max. Marks — 70

General Instructions:

Question paper is divided into 3 Sections- A, B, and C

- 1. There are 29 Questions in all.
- 2. All Questions are compulsory. Write only correct answer
- 3. In Section A Question numbers 1 to 15 are objective type questions carrying 1 mark each. Attempt any 14 questions.
- 4. In Section B Question numbers 16 and 17 are short Source Based and Graph Based questions respectively carrying 3 marks each. Answer any three questions out of 4. Each of these sub-questions carry 1 mark.
- 5. In Section C, Question numbers 18 to 22 are short answer questions carrying 3 marks each Write in 60-80 words. In Section C, Question numbers 23 to 27 are long answer questions carrying 5 marks each Write in 120-150 words.
- 6. Question numbers 28 and 29 are related to location and labelling and identification of geographical features on maps respectively carrying 5 marks each.
- 7. Outline maps of the world and India provided to you and it must be attached within your answer-book.
- 8. Use of template or stencils for drawing outline maps is allowed.

SECTION - A

- 1. Which pair is not matched correctly in the following?
- 1

- a. Founder of human geography Ratzel
- b. Founder of Possibililsm Blash
- c. Branch of Economic Geography Medical Geography
- d. The Father of Neo determinism Griffith Taylor
- 2. Through which of the following can we get important information about the status of women in a country?

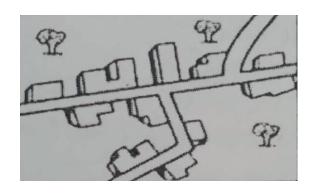
- a. Sex ratio
- b. Family status
- c. Gender discrimination
- d. Recorded attendance of total girls in schools
- 3. What of the following indicates the digital divide?

I

- a. To countries that have access and benefits to and benefit their citizens in information and communication technology.
- b. Uneven distribution of opportunities from information and technology-based development at the globe
- c. Distribution of knowledge based industries
- d. Division of work by digits

4.





- i. Identify the pattern of the rural settlement shown in the picture and write its name.
- ii. These types of settlements develop on the..... of the road.
- 5. Consider the following conditions and choose the title suitable for them from the given options.
 - 1. Very low level of technological development
 - 2. Physical environment as "mother nature"
 - 3. Fearing and worshipping nature by man
 - a. Naturalization of human beings
 - b. Humanization of Nature
 - c. Neo-determinism
 - d. Behaviourist ideology

- 6. Which of the following features is shown by the population pyramid?
 - a. Number of males and females

1

- b. Age and sex structure of the population.
- c. The occupational structure of the population.
- d. Number of people working in the country's population
- 7. Consider and evaluate the statements below and choose the appropriate options from the options given below.
 - i. A large number of mails are still being disposed of by post offices.
 - ii. The association of all forms of communication has not been completely eliminated due to the inexpensive of old mechanisms.

Option 1

- a. Only 1 is correct.
- b. Only 2 is correct.
- c. Both Statements 1 and 2 are correct and Statement 2 makes a proper interpretation of Statement 1
- d. Both statements 1 and 2 are correct. But Statement 2 does not properly explain statement 1.
- 8. Which point below highlights the importance of studying human settlements in human geography?
 - a. This shows the proportion of available land and the number of people living.
 - b. The form of settlements in any area reflects the relationship of human beings to the environment of that area.
 - c. The settlements are constantly inhabited with time and space.
 - d. Shows about the development of people's culture.
- 9. Which of the following pair is not matched correctly?

	Location	Tourism Attractions
a.	Goa	Heritage Homes
b.	Thailand	Beautiful Mountain
c.	Karnataka	Madikere
d.	Singapore	Medical Tourism

- 10. Which of the following processes are working for the decline of different capabilities among the poor? Choose the appropriate option.
 - i. Displacement and weakening social ties
 - ii. Human Attitudes and Society
 - iii. Increasing incidence of diseases and accidents
 - iv. Environmental pollution option
 - a. Only (i) and (iv)
 - b. (i), (ii) and (iii)
 - c. (i), (iii) and (iv)
 - d. (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
- 11. Match list 1 with list 2 and select the correct answer with the code below.

Types of settlements

- i. Clustered or agglomerated settlements.
- ii. Semi-clustered or fragmented settlements
- iii. Hamleted settlements
- iv. Dispersed or isolated Settlements

Areas to be found

1. Lower valleys of Himalayas and Chhatisgarh

1

1

- 2. Meghalaya, Uttarakhand and Himachal Pradesh
- 3. Fertile alluvial plains
- 4. Plains of Gujarat and parts of Rajasthan

codes

	I	II	III	IV
a.	3	4	1	2
b.	1	2	3	4
c.	4	3	2	1
d.	3	4	2	1

- 12. Consider the following statements and select the correct answer with the help of the options given by explaining the cause effect in both.
 - i. Solar thermal technology is more profitable than all other renewable energy sources.

ii. It is cost competitive, environment friendly and easy to construct.

Options

- a. Statement 2 is correct only.
- b. Statement 1 is correct only.
- c. Both Statement 1 and 2 are correct and Statement 2 presents a proper interpretation of Statement 1.
- d. Both the statements are correct but not related among themselves.
- 13. Which of the following options according to population density shows the correct order of the States?
 - a. Bihar, West Bengal, Kerala, Uttar Pradesh
 - b. Kerala, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal
 - c. West Bengal, Kerala, Bihar, Uttar Pradesh
 - d. Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Kerala, West Bengal
- 14. Which of the following air services is serving in hilly areas and is widely used by tourists in north-east sector?
 - a. Pawan Hans Helicopter Service
 - b. Air India Aircraft Service
 - c. Indian Airlines
 - d. Himalayan Aviation Limited
- 15. Which of the following are not matched correctly?

a. Hooghly River Diamond Harbour

b. Bangladesh Trade by Road Route

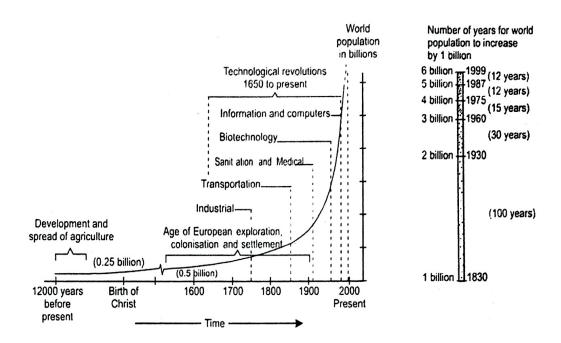
c. Africa lndia's main trading partner

d. Asia and ASEAN India's largest import area

SECTION - B

16. Study the following graph carefully and solve any three questions related to it. 1+1+1=3

1



- 1. Which of the following time span is representing the longest gap of doubling population of the world?
 - a. 1830-2011
 - b. 1830-1930
 - c. 1930-1987
 - d. 1960-2011
- 2. Which of the following development took place 12000 years ago?
 - a. Means of transportation
 - b. Technological revolutions
 - c. Development and spread of agriculture
 - d. Rapid increase in population
- 3. Between 1975 and 1999, population doubling time was reduced on marked level, which of the following factor is most responsible for it?
 - a. Biotechnology
 - b. Industrial revolution
 - c. Development of agriculture
 - d. Development of transportation

- 4. In how many years, population became from 2 billion to 6 billion?
 - a. 60 years
 - b. 65 years
 - c. 100 years
 - d. 9 years
- 17. Study the following source carefully and answer the questions that follows:

1+1+1=3 Ramesh has been

working in contract are welder on construction site in Telcher coal region of odisha for the last two year. He moved with the contractor to various place Jamnagar and so on. He remits RS.20.000 per year to his father in his native village remittances have been mainly used for daily consumption, healthcare, schooling of children, etc. The standard of living Ramesh's family is improved significantly.

Fifteen years ago, the situation was passing through very tough times. Three of his brothers and there families had to survive on three acres of land The family was highly in debt. Ramesh had to discontinue his studies after ninth standard. He was further hard pressed when he got married.

Simultaneously, he was also impressed by some successful out migrants of his village who had been working in Ludhiana and supporting their families in village by sending money and some consumer goods. Thus, due to abject poverty in the family and perceived job promises at Ludhiana, he made a move to Punjab with his friend. He worked there in a woolen factory for six months at the rate of only RS 20 per day in 1988, Apart from the crsis of managing his personal expenditure from this meagre income, he was also facing difficulty in assimilation to the new culture and environment. Then he decided to change his place of work from ludhiana to surat under the guidence of his friend. He learnt the skills of welding in Surat and after that he has been moving to different places with the same contractor. Through the economic condition of Ramesh's family at village improved, he is bearing the pain of separation of his near and dear ones. He cannot shift them with him, as the job is temporary and transferable.

- 1. Which of the following factors is responsible for Ramesh migrating from his village?
- a. Education of children

- b. Lack of employement opportunities due to very low availability of agricultural land
- c. Poor health of the father
- d. Lack of health servicies
- 2. What difficulty did Ramesh face in Ludhiana?
- a. Adapting with new culture and environment
- b. High rent
- c. Distance from kids
- d. All of the above
- 3. Due to lack of coheslon ln Ludhiana, Ramesh first migrated for better employment opportunities towards which of the following cities?
- a. Talcher
- b. Gandhinagar
- c. Surat
- d. Jamnagar
- 4. Which of the following factors has proved to be a negative factor of migration for Ramesh
- b. Improving the economic condition of the family
- c. Meaningfully improves the standard of living
- d. By learning the skills of welding work, income has increased
- e. The agony of staying away from his own kids due to being a temporary and transferable job
- 18. "People's communities are the real wealth of nations" How productivity and 'empowerment' help to build the capabilities of the masses and to give them the power to choose their own choices

Or 3

Explain the role of 'equity' and 'sustainability' as the pillar of human development.

19. The Trans-Canadian railway line is called the Economic Artery of Canada'. Prove the statement by giving any three suitable points. 3

- 20. How do 'division of labour' and 'specialization' pave the way for international trade? Analyse 3
- 21. Describe the demographic consequences of migration in India in three main points

Or

Describe the economic consequences of migration of population in India by giving any three points.

22. Describe any three factors responsible for land degradation in India.

3

- 23. Give a comparative description of dairy farming and mixed farming based on any five points 5
- 24. Give any five features of mordern large scale manufacturing in the world.

5

25. Development is a multidimentional concept. This is a symbol of positive and exemplary change in the economy, society and environment. Prove the statement by giving suitable examples in context of india.

5

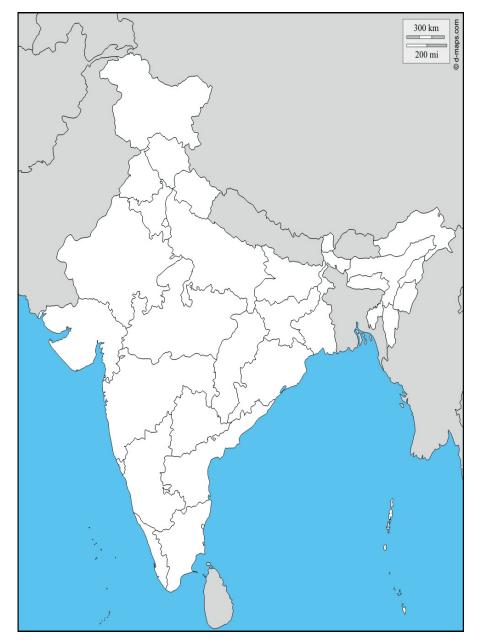
- 26. Watershed management and rain water harvesting in India are the important methods of efficient management and conservation of surface water resources. Explain.
- 27. Explain the salient factors of localization of cotton textile industry in Mumbai in India.

Or

Write down the five major features of the Mumbai-Pune industrial region.

- 28. On the given outline map of India, label any five of the following by using appropriate symbols
 - 1. A state with highest population density.
 - 2. Bauxite mine in Odisha.

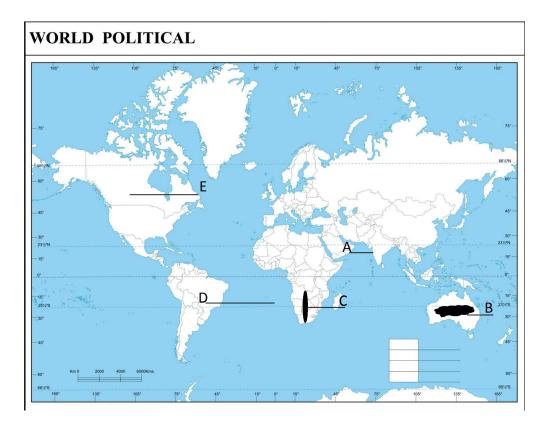
- 3. A Mega City in Maharashtra
- 4. A state with least urbanization
- 5. Iron ore mine in chhatisgarh
- 6. State with highest human development index
- 7. Coal Mines located in West Bengal



29. With the help of the following key, identify the areas marked as A, B, C, D

and E on the given outline map of the world. Write the correct name of the place in the blank space given on the map

- A. Mega City
- B. An area of commercial livestock rearing
- C. Area of mixed agriculture
- D. Largest country in South America
- E. Area of Subsistence gathering of North America



Model Question Paper XII

Max mark=70 Time 3 Hrs.

Direction- As in previous paper

Section A

Q.1	Wh	Thich of the following statement is true in the reference of land use in India?						
	a.b.c.	The land area under forest decreased. The area under barren land increased. Pasture land decreased.						
	d.	Area under culturable waste land increased.						
Q.2	In v	which state lagoons and backwaters are important source of surface water.						
	a.	Gujrat						
	b.	Maharashtra						
	c.	Goa						
	d.	Kerela						
Q.3	Wh	ere is approximate 97% coal reserves of india found?						
	a.	River valleys of Damodar, Son, Mahanadi and Godavari						
	b.	Western sea coast.						
	c.	Ancient Rocks of perninsula plateau.						
	d.	Doab area of Ganges and yamuna.						
Q.4	Fill	in the blank:.						
	a.	Across the english channel of England and Calise in France are called type of port.						
Q.5		ny roads meet at one place and houses are made alongwith these roads. ese type of settlements are callled:						
	a.	Linear pattern						
	b.	Star pattern						
		255 Geography- XII						

Q.6	 Vhich of the following characteristics dose not belongs to suez canal? It is 160 km long. It is between maditeranean ocean and red sea. It has 6 waterlock system. It decreases the distance between western European countries and Southern Asian countries. 	l
Q.7	Vhich country has highest road density in the world? France Spain Japan Srilanka	
Q.8	HDI of Indonesia is 0.617 in 2011. In which category will it fall? Very high High Medium Low	
Q.9	Which of the following statement is not necessary wihle defining any settement an urban settlement. Maximum population is educated. 75% of male population is engaged in nonprimary activites. Pupulation density should be 400 person per sq km. Where there are municipal corporation, cant etc.	
Q.10	There are various oppoaches of HDI. Which of the following approaches are nitiated by ILO. Income Approach Basic needs Approach Welfare Approach aphy- XII 256	
300	upity 1111 250	

T shaped

Cross road pattern

c.

d.

- d. Capability Approach
- Q.11 Due to pandemic covid 19 teaching work was online for a long period some of the students were deprived of teaching learning process due to improper net work system. What does it indicate?
 - a. Inequality in income
 - b. Digital divide
 - c. Social disparity
 - d. None of these
- Q.12 Which of the following lake is not a part of Great lakes System?
 - a. Erie Lake
 - b. Ontario Lake
 - c. Victoria Lake
 - d. Soo Canal
- Q.13 Read the following statement carefully and distinguish wrong one.
 - a. If import balance of a country is more than export value, then the country has negative balance of trade.
 - b. If import value is lass then export balue then the country has positive balance of trade.
 - c. Bilateral trade means a country is trading with many countries.
 - d. Country may not grant the status of most favoured nation on some of the trading partner.
- Q.14 Whih of the following statement is not true for Namani Ganga project.?

1

1

- a. According to this project Ganges should be announced as a 'Holy River'
- b. Various steps have to be taken to keep this river clean.
- c. Special arrangement will be done for worship on its Ghats.
- d. Once in year there will be Ganga Aarti
- Q.15 There are some statement about Petrochemical industry in India. Read them carefully and choose the right option given below.

- i) Plastic industries based on petro chemical industry are in small scale sector.
- ii) Synthetic fibres are due to petro chemical industry.
- iii) Ethylence and propylene are obtaned in he process of refining crude oil.
- iv) The maximum products of petro chemical industry are ecofriendly.
- a. All the above statements are true.
- b. i.ii and iii are ture
- c. Only are wrong.
- d. All are wrong.

OR

The first sugar industry was established in:

- a. Uttarpradesh
- b. Bihar
- c. Maharashtra
- d. Punjab

Section. B

Q.16 Read the pragraph and answer any 3 questions given below:

The Quaternary Sector

The Quaternary Sector along with the Tertiary sector has replaced most of the primary and secondary employment as the basis for economic growth. Over half of all workers in developed economies are in the 'knowledge sector' and there has been a very high growth in demand for and consumption of information based serives from mutual fund managers to tax consultants, software developers and statisticians. Personnel working in office classroooms, hospitals and doctor's offices, theatres, accounting and brokerage firms all belong to this category of services.

Like some of the teriary functions, quaternary activities can also be outsourced. They are not tied to resources, affected by the environment, or necessarily localised by market.

- I. What does shifting of employment from primary and secondary sector show?
 - a. Importance of agriculture and industries become less.

- b. Agriculture produce decreased.
- c. Industries are less profitable now.
- d. Economy is developing.
- II. Which of the following Employment comes under quaternary sector.

1

1

- a. Agriculture Scientist
- b. School Management
- c. Medical transcriptionist
- d. Trade
- III. Which of the following does not come under teriary sector?
 - a. Transport
 - b. Research work
 - c. Servces
 - d. Trade
- IV. What is necessary for out sourcing economic activities?
- 1
- a. These services should be based on local resources
- b. These should be dependant on local environment.
- c. These should be necessarily localised by market
- d. None f the above
- Q.17 Read the table and answer any 3 Questions. Import composition in Indian 2009-2017

(In percentage)

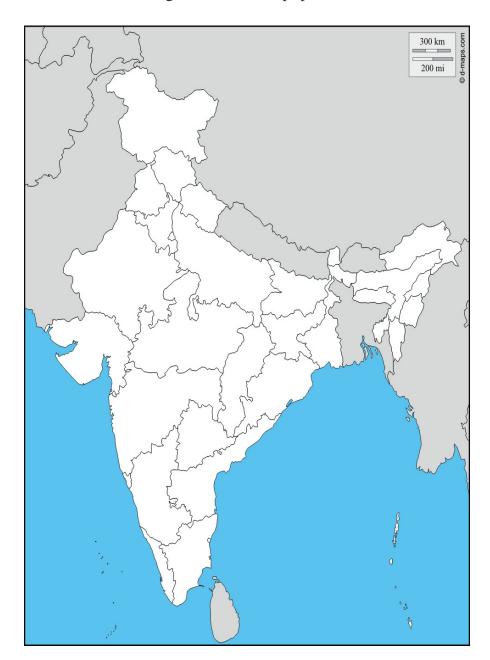
Commodity Group	2009.10	2010.11	2015.16	2016.17
Food and allied products	3.7	2.9	5.1	5.6
Fuel (Coal, POL)	33.2	31.3	25.4	26.7
Fertilisers	2.3	1.9	2.1	1.3
Paper board manufacturing				
and news print	0.5	0.6	0.8	0.9
Capitial goods	15.0	13.1	13.0	13.6
Others	42.6	47.7	38.1	37.8

Source: Economic survey 2016.17

	i)		ing the Period of 2009-10 to 2016-17 percentage growth of various maximum? Petroleum product Ore & mineral Manufactured goods	vhich 1
		d.	Related products	
	ii)	Valı	ue of which import Good is maximum in import trade.	1
		a.	Other goods	
		b.	Manufacturing products	
		c.	Ore and minerals	
		d.	Petroleum products	
	iii)	Wh	y is import value of ore and minerals continiously decreasing?	1
		a.	Imternational competition	
		b.	Demaned decreased	
		c.	India has no interest to import these items.	
		d.	Their prices decreased	
	iv).	Wh	y is import value of Agricultural products inceased?	1
		a.	Import of floriculture produs, fruits etc. increased.	
		b.	Import of wheat- Rice increased.	
		c.	Import of pulses seeds increased.	
		d.	Import of oil seeds increased.	
Q.18	Elal indi		e the main reasons of spreading of cotton textile industry in all	over 3
Q.19	Wri	te thr	ree main characteristies of environmental determinism.	3
Q.20			es progress in Science and technology helped in population growd. Explain with example.	wth in
Geo	grapl	ıy- X	XII 260	

Q.21	What do you understand by transcontinental railways. why does these cas artery of economy of that region? Describe	illed 3
Q.22	Explain the demographic consequences of migration with example. Or What is crop density. What are main factors that influence it?	3
	Section. C	
Q.23	Describe the inequal distribution of population in India. Explain its caus	es. 5
	Or	
	Explain the different stages of population growth in India with example	
Q.24	What are the reason of existence of slums in India? What are the challer faced by it's residence.	nges 5
Q.25	There are tremendous change in Indian Railway system after independential date. How for do you agree with this statement? Explain with example of the system	
Q.26	How did plantation farming start? What arer the characteristis of such typ farming?	oe of 5
Q.27	To achieve High level of HDI what measures should a country take? Exp	olain 5
	Or	
	What are the main basis of intenational trade? Explain with example.	
Q.28	Show the following in the outline map of India with proper symbols and with their name (any five) a. Oil refinery in Karnataka. b. A leading Jute producing state	vrite 5
	c. A northern most international airport	
	1	

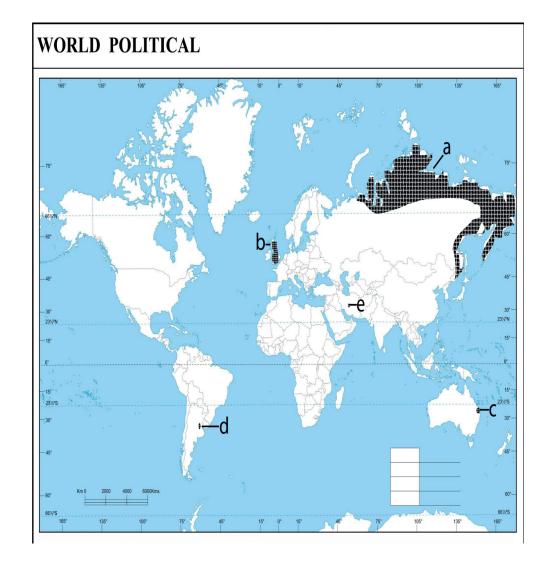
- d. Vishakha Pattnam Guntoor industrial region.
- e. An iron and steel industry in chhatisgarth.
- f. A state with highest urbanised population.



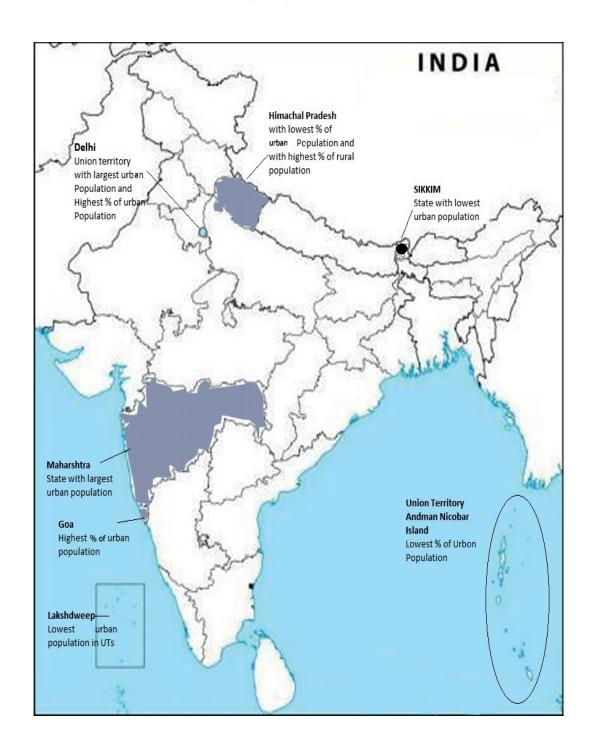
Q.29 In the given map of world, 5 features have been given. Indentfy them with

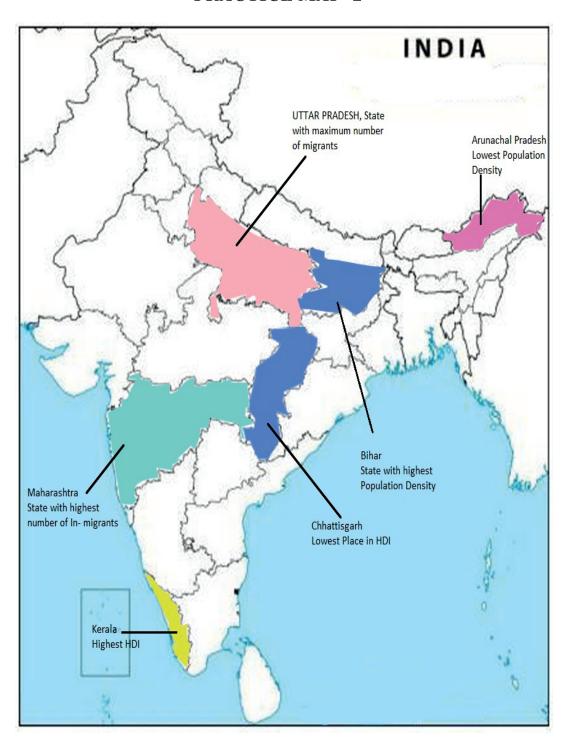
given imformation and write their name on line.

- a. A region of subsistence gathring
- b. An area of Dairy forming
- c. Station of a transcontinental railway
- d. A sea port
- e. An airport

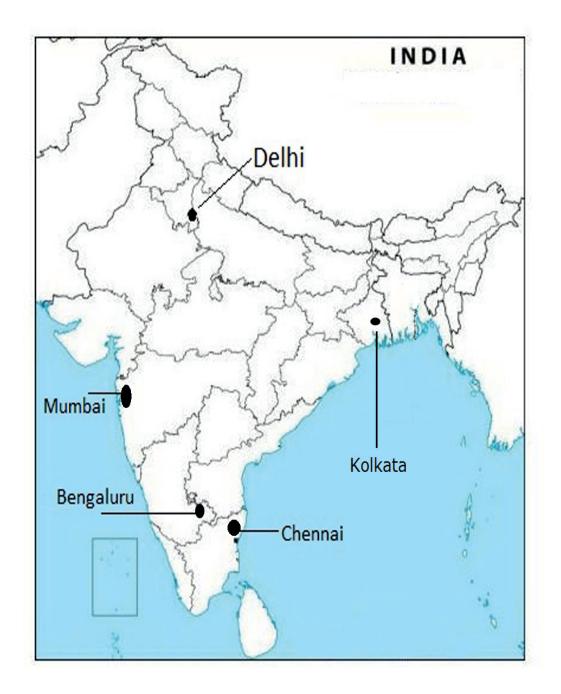


MAP WORK BASED ON CBSE SYLLABUS

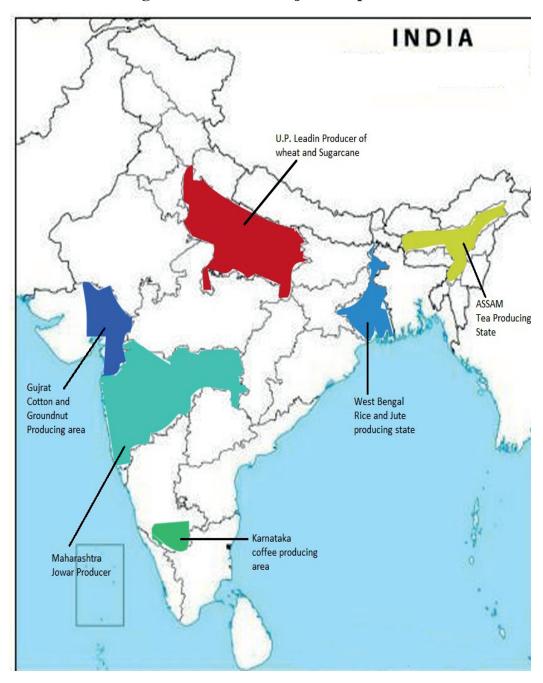




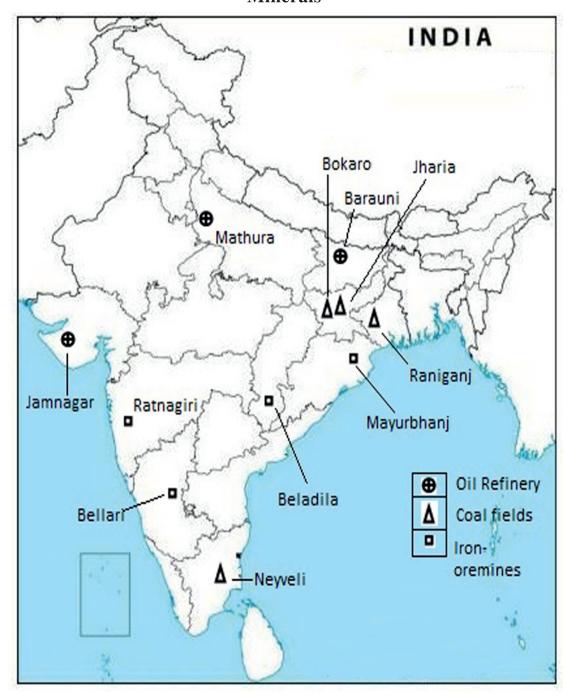
PRACTICE MAP -3 Cities of India With Ten Million Population



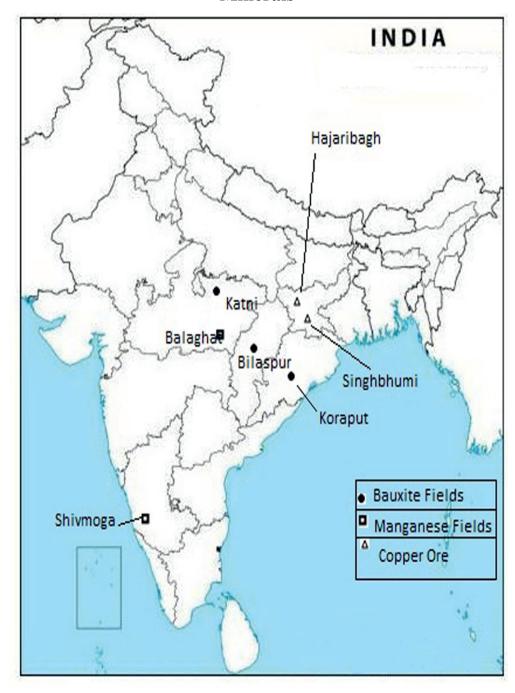
PRACTICE MAP -4
Leading Producers of Major Crop in India



Minerals

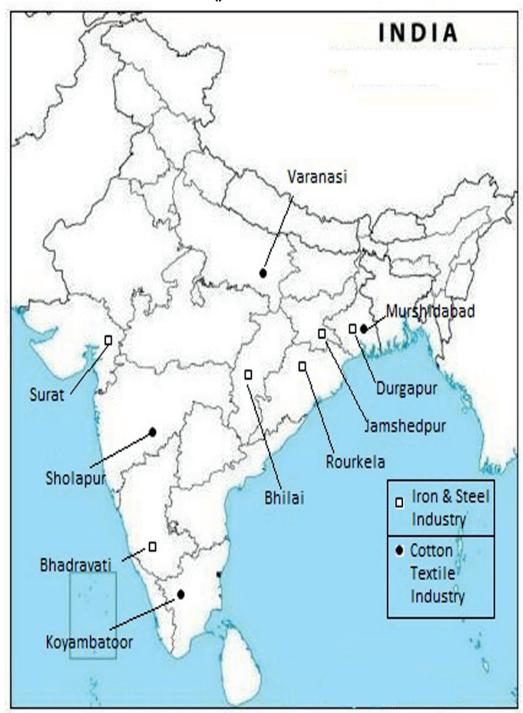


Minerals



271

Major Industries



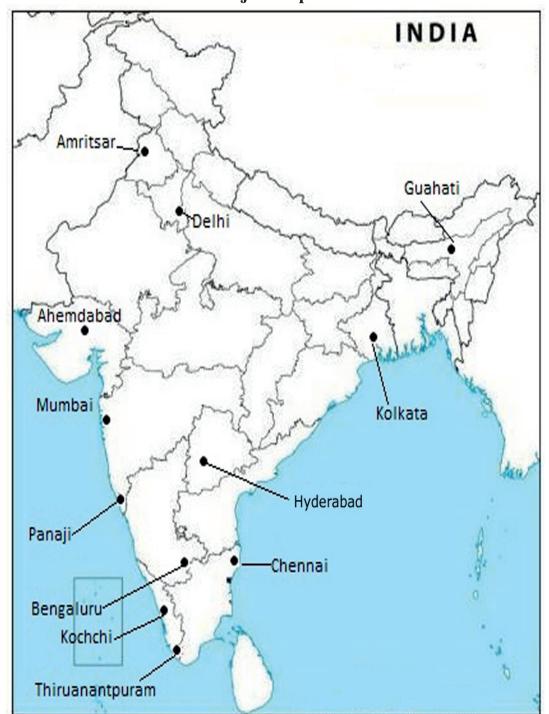
PRACTICE MAP -8

Main Software Technology Park

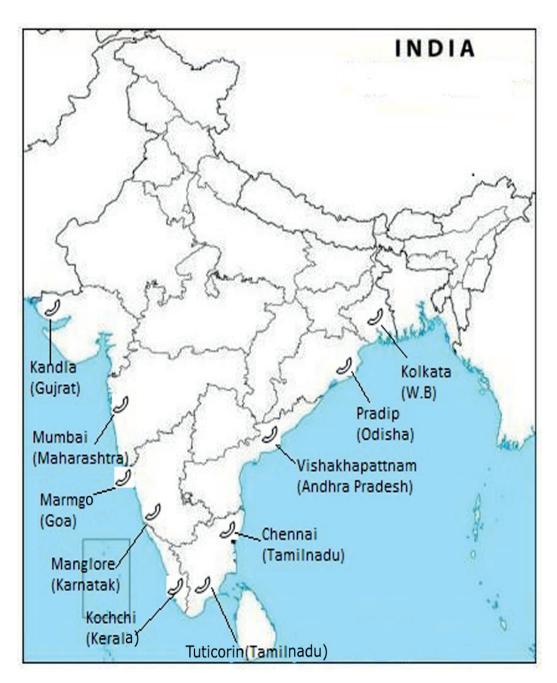


Geography- XII

Major Airport

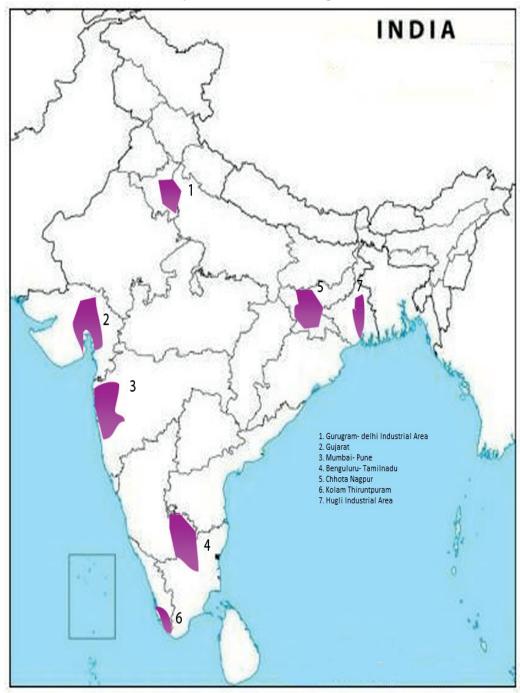


Sea Ports



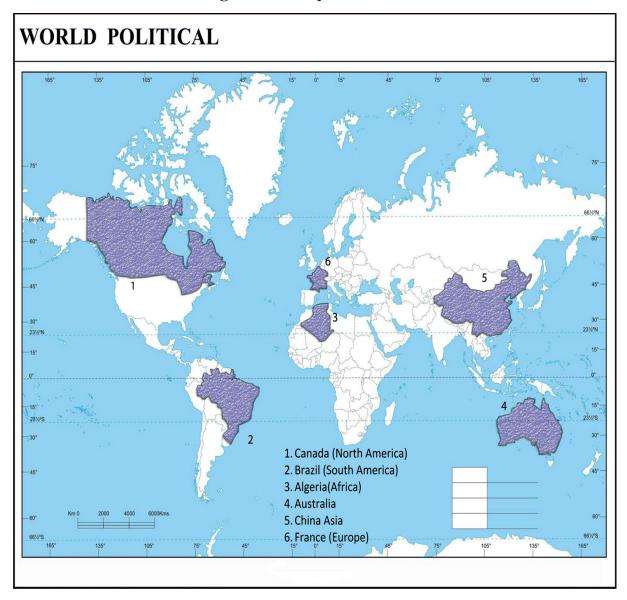
PRACTICE MAP -11

Major Industrial Regions

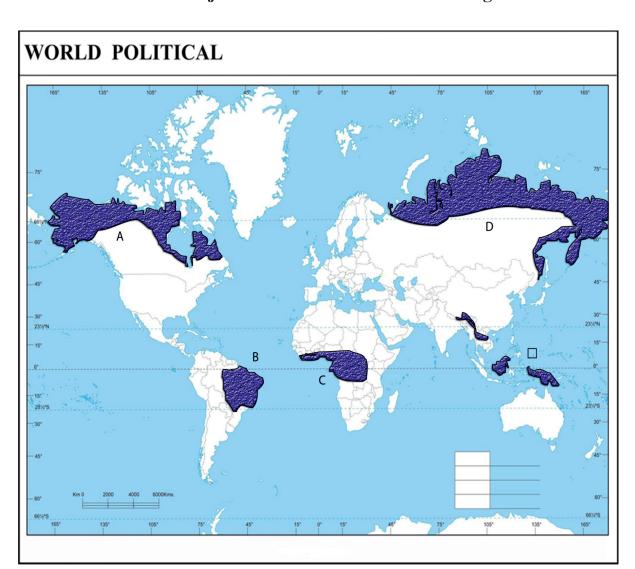


1

The Largest Country of the Continents



The Major areas of subsistence Gathering



- A. North Canada
- B. Amazon Basin
- C. Tropical Africa
- D. Northern Eurasia

Areas of Nomadic Herding

WORLD POLITICAL ORDER TO SERVICE STATE OF THE SERV

Areas of Nomadic Herding

- A. North Africa
- B. Arbian Peninsula
- C. Mangolia
- D. Tundra Region of Europe
- E. Medagasker
- F. South West Africa

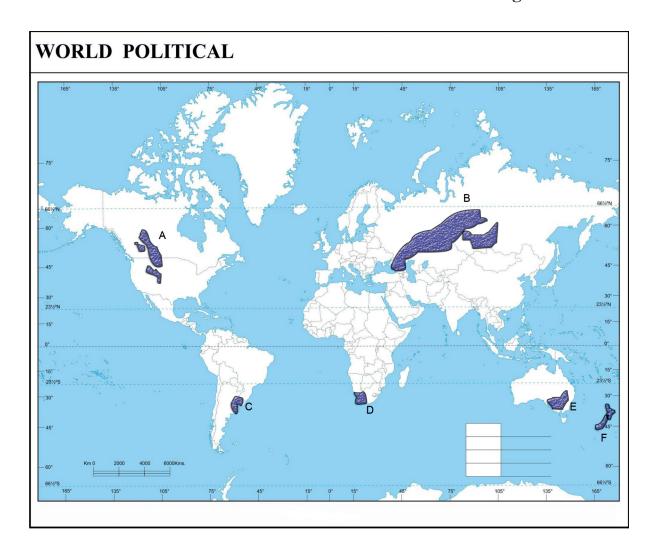
4

Areas of Commercial livestock Rearing

WORLD POLITICAL TO SERVICE STATE OF THE SERVICE ST

- A. North American Region
- B. South America (Argentina, uruguay)
- C. South West Africa
- D. Russia And Middle Asia
- E. Australia
- F. Newzealand

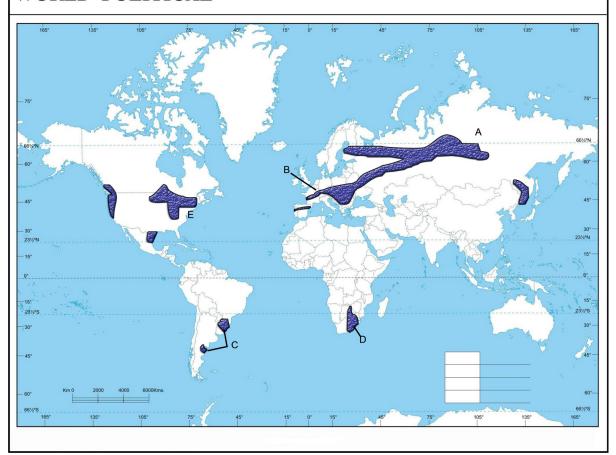
Area of Extensive Commercial Grain Farming



- A. Prairies (North America)
- B. Steppe (Russia)
- C. Pompas (South America)
- D. Velds (South Africa)
- E. Downs (Australia)
- F. Canterburry (Newzealand)

Areas of Mixed Farming

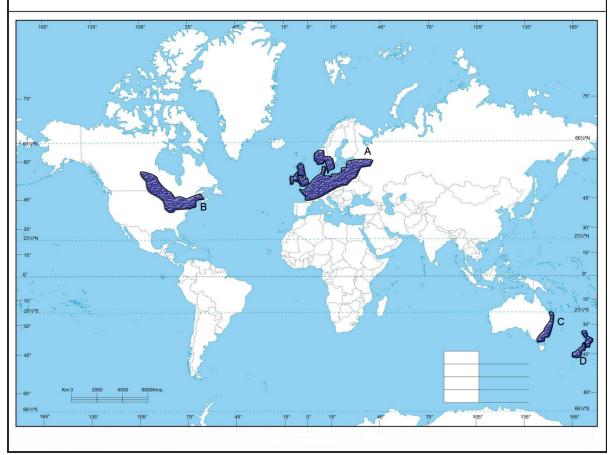
WORLD POLITICAL



- A. Eurasia (Russia)
- B. North west Europe
- C. Temperate Region of South America
- D. South East Africa
- E. Eastern Part of North America

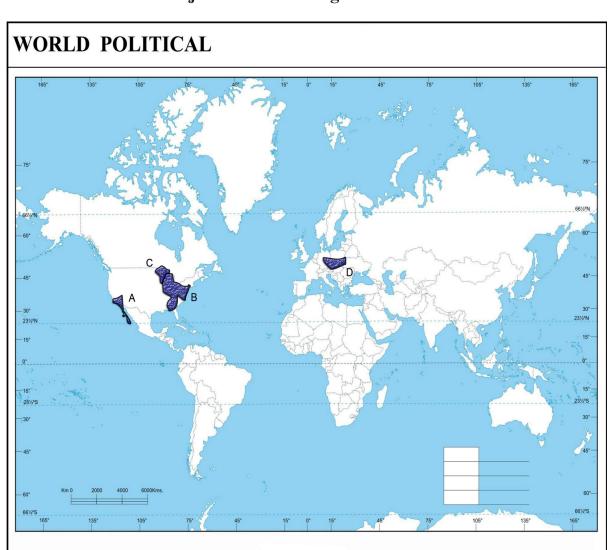
7
Area of Dairy Farming

WORLD POLITICAL



- A. North West Europe
- B. Canada East USA
- C. South Eastern Australia
- D. Newzealand

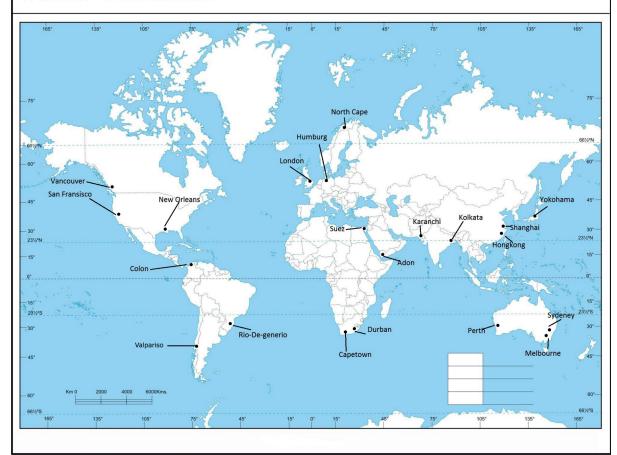
Major Industrial Regions of World



- A. Silicon valley(North America)
- B. Aplachian Industrial Region (North America)
- C. Great Lakes Area (North America)
- D. Ruhr Region (Germany, Europe)

Major Sea Ports

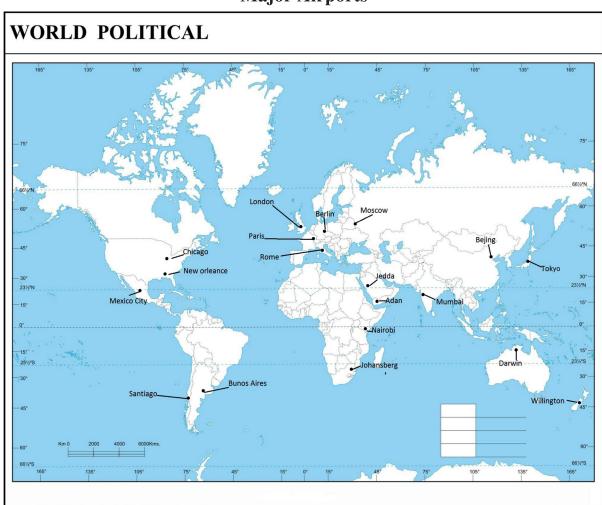
WORLD POLITICAL



- **I. Europe** North cape, London, Humburg.
- II. North America Vancouver, San-fransisco, New-orleans.
- III. South America Colone, Valpariso, Rio-De-gererio.
- IV. Africa Suez, Durban, Capetown.
- V. Asia Yokohama, Shanghai, Hongkong, Adan, Karachi, Kolkata.
- VI. Australia- Perth, Sydeney, Melbourne.

10

Major Airports



Asia - Tokiyo, Bejing, Mumbai, Jedda.

Africa- Johnnsberg, Nairobi

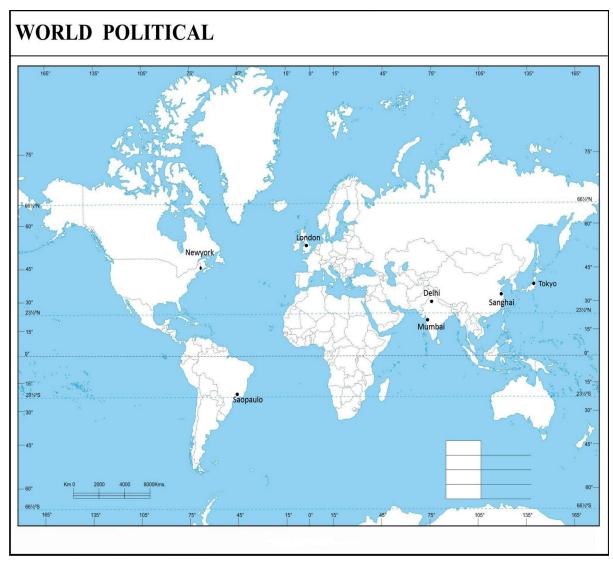
Europe- London, Moscow, Paris, Berlin, Rome.

N. America- Shicago, Neworleance, Mexico city.

S. America- Santiago, Buenos Aires

Australia- Darwin, wellington

11
Some Famous/Main Megacities



GEOGRAPHY (029)

Sample Question Paper (Term1)

2021-22

Class - XII

Time: 90 Minutes Max. Marks 35

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- 1. The Question Paper contains three sections (A, B & C).
- 2. Section A has 24 questions. Attempt any 20 questions.
- 3. Section B has 24 questions. Attempt any 20 questions (Map Section (Q.No. 25-29) is mandatory to attempt).
- 4. Section C has 12 questions. Attempt any 10 questions. (First Part of C Section (Source based has 4 questions (Q.No. 49-52) and all need to be attempted).
- 5. All questions carry equal marks.
- 6. There is no negative marking.

SECTION A

There are 24 questions in this section. Attempt any 20 questions.

- 1. Which one of the following Union Territories has the highest density of population?
 - a) NCT Delhi
 - b) Andaman and Nicobar Island
 - c) Chandigarh
 - d) Puducherry
- 2. Arrange the following approaches in a sequential order according to their development. Choose the correct option.
 - 1. Spatial organization
 - 2. Regional approach
 - 3. Areal differentiation
 - 4. Humanistic approach

Options

- (a) 1423
- (b) 4132
- (c) 2314
- (d) 3241

- 3. Panna, Para, Palli, Nagla and Dhani are examples of which of the following settlements?
 - a) Clustered Settlements
 - b) Semi-Clustered Settlements
 - c) Dispersed Settlements
 - d) Hamleted Settlements
- 4. Which of the following programs sponsored by central government aims at enabling the rural population to conserve water for drinking, irrigation, fisheries and afforestation?
 - a) Arvary Pani Sansad
 - b) Haryali
 - c) Neeru-Meeru
 - d) Narmada bachao
- 5. Population of India according to Occupation can be categorized into:
 - a) Main workers, Marginal workers, Non workers
 - b) Marginal workers, Household industrial workers, Non workers
 - c) Agricultural labourers, Marginal workers, Non workers
 - d) Cultivators, Main workers, Marginal workers
- 6. Who among the following developed the concept of 'human development'?
 - a) Ellen C. Semple
 - b) Dr Mahbub-ul-haq
 - c) Kanwar Sen
 - d) Griffith Tailor
- 7. Which one of the following is not a plantation crop?
 - a) Coffee
 - b) Sugarcane
 - c) Rubber
 - d) Wheat
- 8. Which of the following best describes 'development'?
 - a) An increase in size
 - b) A constant in size
 - c) A positive change in quality
 - d) A simple change in quality

- 9. Which of the following programme is launched by the present Union Government for the cleaning of river Ganga?
 - a) Ganga Action Plan
 - b) Namami Gange
 - c) Ganga Namami Action Plan
 - d) Ganga Cleaning Mission
- 10. Which of the following mainly is not an industrial city?
 - a. Bhilai

- b. Durgapur
- c. Chandigarh
- d. Barauni
- 11. Which one of the following is not a method of mining?
 - a) Shaft mining
 - b) Opencast mining
 - c) Underground mining
 - d) Refining
- 12. According to census 2011, which of the following depicts the percentage of the level of urbanization in India?
 - a) 31.16 %
 - b) 28 %
 - c) 33.16 %
 - d) 26 %
- 13. According to Census of India, migration is enumerated on which of the following basis?
 - a) Place of Origin
 - b) Place of residence
 - c) Place of Origin as well as Place of Residence
 - d) Place of Birth
- 14. Through which of the following, functional relations establish between rural and urban areas?
 - a) Through the means of transport and communications
 - b) Through the supply of raw material
 - c) Through the exchange of finished products in rural areas
 - d) Through the consumption of products produced in rural areas
- 15. Coffee Plantations in Brazil are known as:
 - a) Downs
 - b) Campos
 - c) Fazendas
 - d) Pampas

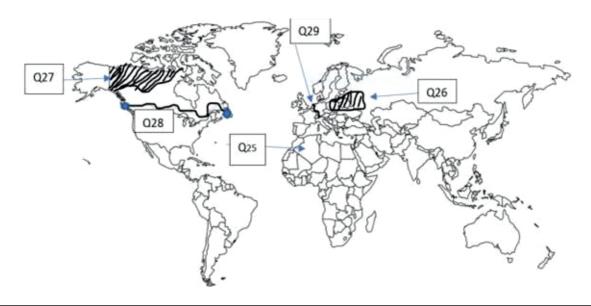
- 16. Who among the following is related to 'capability approach'?
 - a) Dr Mahbub-ul-haq
 - b) Prof Amartya Sen
 - c) Malthus
 - d) Ratzel
- 17. Which of the following areas of our country are deficient in rainfall and are drought prone?
 - a) North- eastern states
 - b) Deccan Plateau
 - c) Gangetic Plain
 - d) Brahmaputra valley
- 18. Which of the following colonial super power had monopoly over sugarcane plantation in Indonesia?
 - a) British
 - b) French
 - c) Dutch
 - d) Americans
- 19. Which of the following is a good example of Fort town?
 - a) Jaipur
 - b) Banaras
 - c) Mathura
 - d) Rameshwaram
- 20. Which one of the following concepts is related to Naturalization of Humans?
 - a) Environmental Determinism
 - b) Possiblism
 - c) Humanism
 - d) Neo-Determinism
- 21. Which one of the following is the main feature of rural settlement?
 - a) Derive economic needs from primary activities
 - b) Derive economic needs from secondary activities
 - c) Derive economic needs from tertiary activities
 - d) Derive economic needs from quaternary activities
- 22. Which of the following sectors has used the highest percentage of total water in India?

- a) Domestic
- b) Commerce
- c) Agriculture
- d) Industry
- 23. Who among the following has introduced the concept of Neodeterminism?
 - a) Ratzel
 - b) Griffith Taylor
 - c) Allen c.Semple
 - d) Paul Vidal de la Blache
- 24. Which of the following attributes has not been adversely affected by Age and Skill selective migration?
 - a) Downfall in working population in rural areas
 - b) The whole burden of agricultural work has to be borne by the old population in rural areas.
 - c) Only old people and women are left behind in the place of origin
 - d) Balance in age and sex composition

SECTION B

(There are 24 questions in this section. Attempt any 20 questions.)

Question no. 25-29 are based on map and are mandatory to attempt. (Visually Impaired students will also attempt MCQs)



- 25. Choose the country with largest Geographical area in the African Continent.
 - a) Algeria
 - b) Sudan
 - c) Egypt
 - d) South Africa
- 26. Which one of the followings is a region of commercial grain farming practiced in Europe?
 - a) Pampas
 - b) Steppes
 - c) Downs
 - d) Prairies
- 27. Which one of the following is a region of North America practicing subsistence gathering?
 - a) Great Lake
 - b) Prairies
 - c) North Canada
 - d) Mexico
- 28. Which of the following terminal stations connect Trans-Canadian Railway?
 - a) Halifax and Vancouver
 - b) New York and San Francisco
 - c) Halifax and Montreal
 - d) Calgary and Vancouver
- 29. Which of the following is the most heavily used inland waterway of the world?
 - a) Suez Canal
 - b) Panama Canal
 - c) Rhine Waterway
 - d) Volga Waterway

Question no. 30-48 (Attempt any 15)

- 30. Consider the following statements and choose the correct option from the given options-
 - 1. Population grown rapidly during the sixteenth and seventeenth century.
 - 2. Expansion of world trade during sixteenth and seventeenth century is an important cause of it.

Options:

- a) Only 1 is correct.
- b) Only 2 is correct
- c) Both the statements are incorrect
- d) Both statements are correct and statement 2 correctly explains the statement
- 31. Which of the following pair is not correctly matched

PILLARS OF HUMAN DEVELOPENT - INDICATORS

- a) Equity-making equal access to opportunities available to everybody
- b) Sustainability Continuity in the availability of opportunities
- c) Productivity -Resources must be used keeping in mind the future
- d) Empowerment-To have the power to make choices
- 32. "Each community occupies a well-identified territory as a matter of tradition".

Above mentioned line is an important characteristic of which of the following activity?

- a) Subsistence agriculture
- b) Nomadic herding
- c) Plantation agriculture
- d) Collective farming
- 33. Which of the following statement is not true regarding the 'Smart City Mission'?
 - a) To promote cities that provide core infrastructure, a clean and sustainable environment and give a decent quality of life to its citizens
 - b) To apply smart solutions to infrastructure and services in order to make them better
 - c) Use of fewer resources, providing cheaper services and focus on sustainable and inclusive development.
 - d) Increase in unemployment
- 34. Which of the following is NOT an environmental consequence of migration?
 - a) Unplanned growth of urban settlement
 - b) Mixing of diverse culture
 - c) Depletion of ground water
 - d) Exploitation of natural resource

35. In Himalayan regions which of the following tribes are linked with the activity of

Transhumance?

- Bheels b. Gonds C. Bakarwals d. Santhals
- 36. Match the column I with Column II and choose the correct options with the help of given Codes.

		0					
	COLUMNI				COLUMNII		
	(CITIES)				(FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION)		
	l.	Ambala			1. Mining town		
	П.	Mughal Sa		2. Transport town			
	III.	Ankaleshv		3. Educational town			
	IV.	Aligarh		4.Garrison town			
	V.	Shimla		5. Commercial town			
	VI.	Saharanpu		6. Tourist town			
CO	DES-						
		1	П	Ш	IV	V	VI
	a.	1	2	3	4	5	6
	b.	4	2	1	3	6	5
	C.	6	5	4	3	2	1
	d.	2	1	4	3	5	6

- 37. This age was marked by use of computers and sophisticated statistical tools. Laws of physics were often applied to map and analyze. Select the correct option.
 - Regional analysis a)
 - b) Quantitative revolution
 - c) **Areal Differentiation**
 - Spatial organization
- 38. In which of the following streams of migration, females pre-dominate in both intra-state and inter-state migration?
 - Urban to rural a)
 - b) Urban to urban
 - Rural to rural c)
 - Rural to urban d)

39. Which of the following column is not matched correctly?

ACTIVITY CHARACTERISTICS

- a) Truck farming Growing of vegetables
- b) Factory farming Rearing of poultry and cattle
- c) Market gardening Growing of flowers
- d) Viticulture Rearing of fish
- 40. Consider the following features and choose the correct title after associating them.
- 1. More often such a pattern may also result from segregation or fragmentation of large compact village.
- 2. The land- owning and dominant community occupies the central part of the main village whereas people of lower strata of society and menial workers settle on the outer flanks of the village.
- 3. They are found in Gujarat plains and some parts of Rajasthan. OPTIONS
 - a) Hamleted Settlement
 - b) Semi-clustered or fragmented
 - c) Clustered Settlements
 - d) Isolated Settlements
- 41. Consider the following and choose the correct answer from the given options-
 - I. Work participation rate tend to be higher in the areas of lower levels of economic development.
 - II. Number of manual workers are needed to perform the subsistence or near subsistence economic activities

Options-

- a) Only statement I is correct
- b) Both statements are correct and statement II correctly explains statement I
- c) Only statement II is correct
- d) Both the statements are incorrect
- 42. Consider the following statements and choose the correct option for the same:
 - I. Grape cultivation is the specialty of the Mediterranean agriculture.
 - II. Wines are produced from high quality grapes and the inferior grapes are dried into raisins and Currants.

Options;

- a) Only 1 is correct
- b) Both 1 and 2 are correct
- c) Only 2 is correct
- d) Both are incorrect
- 43. Match the column I with column II and choose the correct answer with the help of given Codes.

COLUMN II (POLLUTED PLACE) COLUMNI (RIVERS) Yamuna 1. Hyderabad Ш Kali 2. Kanpur and Varanasi Gomati 3. Ahmedabad Ш IV Sabarmati 4. Lucknow V 5. Muzaffar Nagar Ganga VΙ Musi 6. Delhi and Etawah Codes-1 Ш Ш IV V V١ 5 1 6 a. 2 3 4 5 6 b. 1 5 3 2 6 4 1 C. 1 d. 2 3 5 4 6

- 44. In the year 2015, a policy was formulated for the adolescents to give them proper guidance and the better development of their talent. Select the correct answer.
 - a) Skill development and entrepreneurship
 - b) Universalisation of education
 - c) Rejuvenation of schools
 - d) National Youth Policy
- 45. Which of the following pairs is not matched correctly?

CITIES BASIS OF DEVELOPMENT a) Prayag (Allahabad) - On religious and cultural basis b) Lucknow - Based on the remnants of ancient cities c) Kolkata - On cultural basis d) Mumbai - In the form of commercial port

46. Match the column I with column II and choose the correct answer with the help of given Codes-

COLUMNI(CITIES) COLUMN II (TYPES OF CITIES) 1. Summer resort Jamshedpur 2. Satellite town 11. Bhuvaneshwar III. Ghaziabad 3. Industrial town IV Mussoorie 4. Commercial port V Goa 5. Administrative town CODES-V 1 Ш Ш IV 2 3 5 4 a. 2 5 4 3 1 b. 5 3 2 C. 4 1 d. 3 5 4 2 1

- 47. Consider and evaluate the following statements than choose correct options for them from the given options.
- 1. Many species now have become extinct or endangered due to illegal hunting.
- 2. The early hunters used primitive tools made of stones, twigs or arrows so the number of animals killed were limited.

Options;

- a) Only statement 1 is correct
- b) Only statement 2 is correct
- c) Both statements 1 and 2 are correct
- d) Both statements are incorrect
- 48. Make correct pairs of the following two columns and select the correct option.

Period Approach

- 1. Early colonial period
- (a) Exploration & Description
- 2. Late 1950's to the late 1960's
- (b) Regional Analysis
- 3. Later colonial period
- (c) Aerial Differentiation
- 4. 1930's through the inter-war period (d) Spatial Organization

Options

- (A) 1. (a) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (c)
- (B) 1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (c) 4. (b)
- (C) 1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (a)
- (D) 1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (c) 4. (d)

SECTION C SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

Question number 49 to 52 are compulsory to attempt Jal Kranti Abhiyan (2015-16)

Water is a recyclable resource but its availability is limited and the gap between supply and demand will be widening over time. Climate change at the global scale will be creating water stress conditions in many regions of the world. India has a unique situation of high population growth and rapid economic development with high water demand. The Jal Kranti Abhiyan launched by the Government of India in 2015–16 with an aim to ensure water security through per capita availability of water in the country. People in different regions of India had practised the traditional knowledge of water conservation and management to ensure water availability. The Jal Kranti Abhiyan aims at involving local bodies, NGOs and cititzens, at large, in creating awareness regarding its objectives.

The following activities have been proposed under the Jal Kranti Abhiyan:

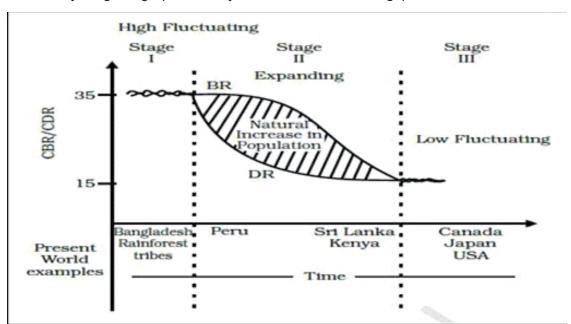
- 1. Selection of one water stressed village in each 672 districts of the country to create a 'Jal Gram'.
- 2. Identification of model command area of about 1000 hectares in different parts of the country, for example, UP, Haryana (North), Karnataka, Telangana, Tamil Nadu (South), Rajasthan, Gujarat (West), Odisha (East), Meghalaya (North-East).
- 3. Abatement of pollution: Water conservation and artificial recharge. Reducing groundwater pollution. Construction of Arsenic-free wells in selected areas of the country.
- 4. Creating mass awareness through social media, radio, TV, print media, poster and essay writing competitions in schools. Jal Kranti Abhiyan is designed to provide livelihood and food security through water security.
- 49. Present day world is experiencing acute water paucity due to:
 - a). Climate Change
 - b). Industrial Pollution
 - c). Rising Sea level
 - d). Forest Depletion
- 50. Which of the following is not a characteristic feature of Model Command Area in India?
 - a) Water conservation and artificial recharge
 - b) Reducing groundwater pollution
 - c) Construction of Arsenic-free wells in selected areas of the country
 - d) Not concerned with food security and livelihood of the people

- 51. The Objective of the Jal Kranti Abhiyan is achieved through:.
 - a) Using traditional know how
 - b) Adopting modern technology
 - c) Mixing modern technology with traditional knowledge
 - d) Outsource to some other organization
- 52. The main aim of The Jal Kranti Abhiyan is to ensure water security through----.
 - a) Creating Jal Grams
 - b) Reducing ground water pollution
 - c) Per capita availability of water
 - d) Construction of arsenic free wells

GRAPH BASED QUESTION

Attempt any 3 questions from the following questions 53-56

Study the given graph carefully and answer the following questions:



- 53. How does the natural increase in population occur, as per the graph?
 - a) Birth Rate Death Rate
 - b) Death Rate + Birth Rate
 - c) Growth Rate Birth Rate
 - d) Birth Rate + Migration

- 54. What does the transition from high fluctuating stage to low fluctuating stage indicate?
 - a) Shift from Urban Industrial economy to Rural Agrarian economy
 - b) Shift from Rural Agrarian economy to Urban Industrial economy
 - c) Low Birth and Death Rate to High Birth and Death Rate
 - d) Migration from Urban to Rural areas
- 55. From the given graph, what condition can you infer about the developing countries?
 - a) High Birth Rate and High Death Rate
 - b) Low Birth rate and Low Death rate
 - c) High Birth Rate and Low Death Rate
 - d) Low Birth Rate and High Death Rate
- 56. In which stage of Demographic Transition, population explosion took place
 - a) Stage I
 - b) Stage II
 - c) Stage III
 - d) Post Stage III

For Visually Impaired Candidates In lieu of Q No. 53-56 (Graph Based Question)

- Q.53 Why are Fertility and Mortality rates high in the first stage of Demographic Transition Theory?
 - a) People have a lot of buffer stock as food security.
 - b) People reproduce more to compensate for the deaths due to epidemics.
 - c) People are highly educated at this stage.
 - d) There is technological advancement in all fields.
- Q.54 What led to decline in Mortality rate in the Second stage of Demographic Transition Theory?
 - a) Due to improvement in Sanitation and Health conditions.
 - b) Due to insufficient supply of food grain that led to starvation.
 - c) Due to widespread illiteracy all over the world.
 - d) Due to unfavorable sex ratio prevailing in developing countries.
- Q.55 Why does fertility rate show a declining trend in the third stage of Demographic Transition Theory?

- a) This is because human beings are not able to adjust their fertility.
- b) Literacy rates show a downward trend all over the world.
- c) The population becomes urbanized and has high technical knowhow.
- d) There is acute food shortage in countries with a high Human Development Index.
- Q.56 In which stage of Demographic Transition, population explosion took place
 - a) Stage I
 - b) Stage II
 - c) Stage III
 - d) Post Stage III

DATA BASED QUESTIONS

Attempt any 3 questions from the following questions 57-60

Table 1.1 : Decadal Growth Rates in India, 1901-2011

Census Years	Total Population	Growth Rate*	
		Absolute Number	% of Growth
1901	238396327		
1911	252093390	(+) 13697063	(+) 5.75
1921	251321213	(-) 772117	(-) 0.31
1931	278977238	(+) 27656025	(+) 11.60
1941	318660580	(+) 39683342	(+) 14.22
1951	361088090	(+) 42420485	(+) 13.31
1961	439234771	(+) 77682873	(+) 21.51
1971	548159652	(+) 108924881	(+) 24.80
1981	683329097	(+) 135169445	(+) 24.66
1991	846302688	(+) 162973591	(+) 23.85
2001	1028610328	(+) 182307640	(+) 21.54
2011**	1210193422	(+) 181583094	(+) 17.64

^{*} Decadal growth rate: $g = \frac{p_2 - p_1}{p_1} \times 100$

where P_1 = population of the base year

- 57. Which year has seen a negative population growth rate in India?
 - a) 1931
 - b) 1921
 - c) 1911
 - d) 1941

P₂ = population of the present year ** Source : Census of India, 2011(Provisional)

- 58. What was the highest recorded growth rate of population in India?
 - a. 24.66
 - b. 24.80
 - c. 23.85
 - d. 21.54
- 59. Which year has recorded the highest growth of population in India in terms of absolute numbers?
 - a. 2001
 - b. 2011
 - c. 1991
 - d. 1981
- 60. How much population increase has been registered between the census years 1911 to census year 2011?
 - a. 900789600
 - b. 182307640
 - c. 181583094
 - d. 971797095

GEOGRAPHY (029)

Marking Scheme (Term1)

2021-22

Class - XII

SECTION A

- 1. Which one of the following Union Territories has the highest density of population?
 - a) NCT Delhi
- 2. Arrange the following approaches in a sequential order according to their development. Choose the correct option.
 - 1. Spatial organization
 - 2. Regional approach
 - 3. Areal differentiation
 - 4. Humanistic approach

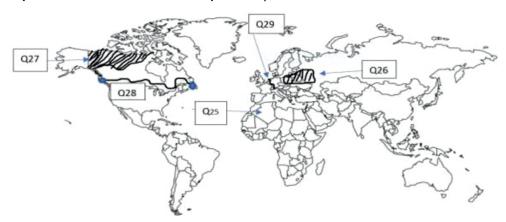
Options

- (c) 2314
- 3. Panna, Para, Palli, Nagla and Dhani are examples of which of the following settlements?
 - d) Hamleted Settlements
- 4. Which of the following programs sponsored by central government aims at enabling the rural population to conserve water for drinking, irrigation, fisheries and afforestation?
 - b) Haryali
- 5. Population of India according to Occupation can be categorized into:
 - a) Main workers, Marginal workers, Non workers
- 6. Who among the following developed the concept of 'human development'?
 - b) Dr Mahbub-ul-Haq
- 7. Which one of the following is not a plantation crop?
 - d) Wheat
- 8. Which of the following best describes 'development'?
 - c) A positive change in quality
- 9. Which of the following programme is launched by the present Union Government for the cleaning of river Ganga?
 - b) Namami Gange
- 10. Which of the following mainly is not an industrial city?
 - c) Chandigarh
- 11. Which one of the following is not a method of mining?
 - d) Refining
- 12. According to census 2011, which of the following depicts the percentage of the level of urbanization in India?
 - a) 31.16%

- 13. According to Census of India, migration is enumerated on which of the following basis?
 - c) Place of Origin as well as Place of Residence
- 14. Clustered settlements are not found in which of the following regions of India?
 - b) Water scarce areas of Rajasthan
- 15. Coffee Plantations in Brazil are known as:
 - c) Fazendas
- 16. Who among the following is related to 'capability approach'?
 - b) Prof Amartya Sen
- 17. Which of the following areas of our country are deficient in rainfall and are drought prone?
 - b) Deccan Plateau
- 18. Which of the following colonial super power had monopoly over sugarcane plantation in Indonesia?
 - c) Dutch
- 19. Which of the following is a good example of Fort town?
 - a) Jaipur
- 20. Which one of the following concepts is related to Naturalization of Humans?
 - a) Environmental Determinism
- 21. Which one of the following is the main feature of rural settlement?
 - a) Derive economic needs from primary activities
- 22. Which of the following sectors has used the highest percentage of total water in India?
 - c) Agriculture
- 23. Who among the following has introduced the concept of Neo-determinism?
 - b) Griffith Taylor
- 24. Which of the following attributes has not been adversely affected by Age and Skill selective migration?
 - a) Downfall in working population in rural areas

SECTION B

Question no. 25-29 are based on map and are mandatory to attempt. (Visually Impaired students will also attempt MCQs)



- 25. Choose the country with largest Geographical area in the African Continent.
 - a). Algeria
- 26. Which one of the followings is a region of commercial grain farming practiced in Europe?
 - b) Steppes
- 27. Which of the following is a region of North America practicing subsistence gathering?
 - c) North Canada
- 28. Which of the following terminal stations connect Trans-Canadian Railway?
 - a) Halifax and Vancouver
- 29. Which of the following is the most heavily used inland waterway of the world?
 - c) Rhine Waterway

Question no. 30-48

- 30. Consider the following statements and choose the correct option from the given options-
- 1. Population grown rapidly during the sixteenth and seventeenth century.
- 2. Expansion of world trade during sixteenth and seventeenth century is an important cause of it.
 - d) Both statements are correct and statement 2 correctly explains the statement 1.
- 31. Which of the following pair is not correctly matched

PILLARS OF HUMAN DEVELOPENT INDICATORS

c. Productivity

- Resources must be used keeping in mind the future

32. "Each community occupies a well-identified territory as a matter of tradition".

Above mentioned line is an important characteristic of which of the following activity?

- b) Nomadic herding
- 33. Which of the following statement is not true regarding the 'Smart City Mission'?
- d) Increase in unemployment
- 34. Which of the following is NOT an environmental consequence of migration?
 - b) Mixing of diverse culture
- 35. In Himalayan regions which of the following tribes are linked with the activity of Transhumance?
 - c. Bakarwals
- 36. Match the column I with Column II and choose the correct options with the help of given Codes.

COLUMN I COLUMN II

(CITIES) (FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION)

I. Ambala 1. Mining townII. Mughal Sarai 2. Transport town

III. Ankaleshwar

3. Educational town

IV. Aligarh

4. Garrison town

V. Shimla

5. Commercial town

VI. Saharanpur

6. Tourist town

CODES-

b.

I II III IV V VI 4 2 1 3 6 5

- 37. This age was marked by use of computers and sophisticated statistical tools. Laws of physics were often applied to map and analyze. Select the option.
 - d) Spatial organization
- 38. In which of the following streams of migration, females pre-dominate in both intrastate and inter-state migration?
 - c) Rural to rural
- 39. Which of the following column is not matched correctly?

ACTIVITY

CHARACTERISTICS

d. Viticulture

Rearing of fish

- 40. Consider the following features and choose the correct title after associating them.
 - I. More often such a pattern may also result from segregation or fragmentation of large compact village.
 - II. The land- owning and dominant community occupies the central part of the main village whereas people of lower strata of society and menial workers settle on the outer flanks of the village.
 - III. They are found in Gujarat plains and some parts of Rajasthan.

OPTIONS-

- b. Semi-clustered or fragmented
- 41. Consider the following and choose the correct answer from the given options-
 - I. Work participation rate tend to be higher in the areas of lower levels of economic development.
 - II. Number of manual workers are needed to perform the subsistence or near subsistence economic activities

Options-

- b) Both statements are correct and statement II correctly explains statement I
- 42. Consider the following statements and choose the correct option for the same:
 - 1. Grape cultivation is the specialty of the Mediterranean agriculture.
 - 2. Wines are produced from high quality grapes and the inferior grapes are dried into raisins and Currants.

Options;

b. Both 1 and 2 are correct

43. Match the column I with column II and choose the correct answer with the help of given Codes.

COLUMNI (RIVERS) **COLUMN II (POLLUTED PLACE)** Yamuna 1. Hyderabad П Kali 2. Kanpur and Varanasi Ш Gomati 3. Ahmedabad IV Sabarmati 4. Lucknow V Ganga 5. Muzaffar Nagar VΙ Musi 6. Delhi and Etawah Codes-1 Ш Ш VI IV V 5 3

- a. 6
 5
 4
 3
 2
 1
 44. In the year 2015, a policy was formulated for the adolescents to give them proper guidance and the better development of their talent. Select the correct answer.
 - a) Skill development and entrepreneurship
- 45. Which of the following pairs is not matched correctly?

CITIES

BASIS OF DEVELOPMENT

c) Kolkata -On cultural basis

46. Match the column I with column II and choose the correct answer with the help of given Codes-

COLUMN I (CITIES)

COLUMN II (TYPES OF CITIES)

I Jamshedpur
II. Bhuvaneshwar
III. Ghaziabad
IV Mussoorie
V Goa
1. Summer resort
2. Satellite town
3. Industrial town
4. Commercial port
V
5. Administrative town

CODES-

l II III IV V b. 3 5 2 1 4

- 47. Consider and evaluate the following statements than choose correct options for them from the given options.
- 1. Many species now have become extinct or endangered due to illegal hunting.
- 2. The early hunters used primitive tools made of stones, twigs or arrows so the number of animals killed were limited.

Options;

- c) Both statements 1 and 2 are correct
- 48. Make correct pairs of the following two columns and select the correct option.

Period

- 1. Early colonial period
- 2. Late 1950's to the late 1960's
- 3. Later colonial period
- 4. 1930's through the inter-war period
- (A) 1. (a) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (c)

Approach

- (a) Exploration & Description
- (b) Regional Analysis
- (c) Aerial Differentiation
- (d) Spatial Organization

SECTION C

SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS

Question number 49 to 52 are compulsory to attempt

Jal Kranti Abhiyan (2015-16)

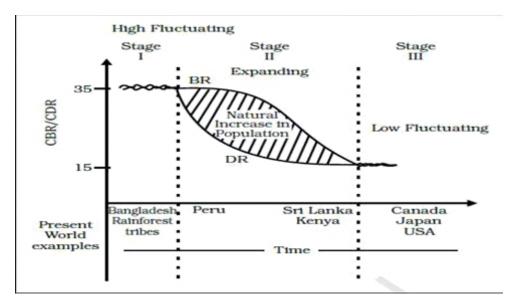
Water is a recyclable resource but its availability is limited and the gap between supply and demand will be widening over time. Climate change at the global scale will be creating water stress conditions in many regions of the world. India has a unique situation of high population growth and rapid economic development with high water demand. The Jal Kranti Abhiyan launched by the Government of India in 2015–16 with an aim to ensure water security through per capita availability of water in the country. People in different regions of India had practised the traditional knowledge of water conservation and management to ensure water availability. The Jal Kranti Abhiyan aims at involving local bodies, NGOs and cititzens, at large, in creating awareness regarding its objectives.

The following activities have been proposed under the Jal Kranti Abhiyan: 1. Selection of one water stressed village in each 672 districts of the country to create a 'Jal Gram'. 2. Ídentification of model command area of about 1000 hectares in different parts of the country, for example, UP, Haryana (North), Karnataka, Telangana, Tamil Nadu (South), Rajasthan, Gujarat (West), Odisha (East), Meghalaya (North-East). 3. Abatement of pollution: • Water conservation and artificial recharge. • Reducing groundwater pollution. • Construction of Arsenic-free wells in selected areas of the country. 4. Creating mass awareness through social media, radio, TV, print media, poster and essay writing competitions in schools. Jal Kranti Abhiyan is designed to provide livelihood and food security through water security.

- 49. Present day world is experiencing acute water paucity due to:
 - a). Climate Change
- 50. Which of the following is not a characteristic feature of Model Command Area in India?
 - d). Not concerned with food security and livelihood of the people
- 51. The Objective of the Jal Kranti Abhiyan is achieved through:
 - c). Mixing modern technology with traditional knowledge
- 52. The main aim of The Jal Kranti Abhiyan is to ensure water security through-----.
 - c). Per capita availability of water

GRAPH BASED QUESTION

Study the given graph carefully and answer the following questions:



- 53. How does the natural increase in population occur, as per the graph?
 - a) Birth Rate Death Rate
- 54. What does the transition from high fluctuating stage to low fluctuating stage indicate?
- b) Shift from Rural Agrarian economy to Urban Industrial economy
- 55. From the given graph, what condition can you infer about the developing countries?
 - c) High Birth Rate and Low Death Rate
- 56. In which stage of Demographic Transition, population explosion took place
 - b) Stage II

For Visually Impaired Candidates in lieu of Q No. 53-56 (Graph Based Question)

- Q.53Why are Fertility and Mortality rates high in the first stage of Demographic TransitionTheory?
 - b) People reproduce more to compensate for the deaths due to epidemics.
- Q.54What led to decline in Mortality rate in the Second stage of Demographic TransitionTheory
 - a) Due to improvement in Sanitation and Health conditions.
- Q.55Why does fertility rate show a declining trend in the third stage of Demographic Transition Theory?
 - c) The population becomes urbanized and has high technical knowhow.
 - a) There is acute food shortage in countries with a high Human Development Index.
- Q.56 In which stage of Demographic Transition, population explosion took place
 - b) Stage II

DATA BASED QUESTIONS

Table 1.1: Decadal Growth Rates in India, 1901-2011

Census Years	Total Population	Growth Rate*	
		Absolute Number	% of Growth
1901	238396327		
1911	252093390	(+) 13697063	(+) 5.75
1921	251321213	(-) 772117	(-) 0.31
1931	278977238	(+) 27656025	(+) 11.60
1941	318660580	(+) 39683342	(+) 14.22
1951	361088090	(+) 42420485	(+) 13.31
1961	439234771	(+) 77682873	(+) 21.51
1971	548159652	(+) 108924881	(+) 24.80
1981	683329097	(+) 135169445	(+) 24.66
1991	846302688	(+) 162973591	(+) 23.85
2001	1028610328	(+) 182307640	(+) 21.54
2011**	1210193422	(+) 181583094	(+) 17.64
ecadal growth	rate: $g = \frac{p_2 - p_1}{p_1} \times 100$		

P₂ = population of the present year
** Source : Census of India, 2011(Provisional)

- 57. Which year has seen a negative population growth rate in India? b. 1921
- 58. What was the highest recorded growth rate of population in India?
 - b. 24.80
- 59. Which year has recorded the highest growth of population in India in terms of absolute numbers?
 - a. 2001
- 60. How much population increase has been registered between the census years 1911 to census year 2011?
 - d) 971797095